

REDLINE VERSION



**Medical electrical equipment –
Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance –
Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical
electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment**



THIS PUBLICATION IS COPYRIGHT PROTECTED

Copyright © 2015 IEC, Geneva, Switzerland

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either IEC or IEC's member National Committee in the country of the requester. If you have any questions about IEC copyright or have an enquiry about obtaining additional rights to this publication, please contact the address below or your local IEC member National Committee for further information.

IEC Central Office
3, rue de Varembe
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland

Tel.: +41 22 919 02 11
Fax: +41 22 919 03 00
info@iec.ch
www.iec.ch

About the IEC

The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is the leading global organization that prepares and publishes International Standards for all electrical, electronic and related technologies.

About IEC publications

The technical content of IEC publications is kept under constant review by the IEC. Please make sure that you have the latest edition, a corrigenda or an amendment might have been published.

IEC Catalogue - webstore.iec.ch/catalogue

The stand-alone application for consulting the entire bibliographical information on IEC International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports and other documents. Available for PC, Mac OS, Android Tablets and iPad.

IEC publications search - www.iec.ch/searchpub

The advanced search enables to find IEC publications by a variety of criteria (reference number, text, technical committee,...). It also gives information on projects, replaced and withdrawn publications.

IEC Just Published - webstore.iec.ch/justpublished

Stay up to date on all new IEC publications. Just Published details all new publications released. Available online and also once a month by email.

Electropedia - www.electropedia.org

The world's leading online dictionary of electronic and electrical terms containing more than 30 000 terms and definitions in English and French, with equivalent terms in 15 additional languages. Also known as the International Electrotechnical Vocabulary (IEV) online.

IEC Glossary - std.iec.ch/glossary

More than 60 000 electrotechnical terminology entries in English and French extracted from the Terms and Definitions clause of IEC publications issued since 2002. Some entries have been collected from earlier publications of IEC TC 37, 77, 86 and CISPR.

IEC Customer Service Centre - webstore.iec.ch/csc

If you wish to give us your feedback on this publication or need further assistance, please contact the Customer Service Centre: csc@iec.ch.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60076-1:2015

REDLINE VERSION



**Medical electrical equipment –
Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance –
Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical
electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment**

INTERNATIONAL
ELECTROTECHNICAL
COMMISSION

ICS 11.040

ISBN 978-2-8322-2214-0

Warning! Make sure that you obtained this publication from an authorized distributor.

CONTENTS

FOREWORD.....	5
INTRODUCTION.....	2
1 Scope, object and related standards.....	9
1.1 * Scope.....	9
1.2 Object.....	9
1.3 Related standards.....	9
1.3.1 IEC 60601-1	9
1.3.2 Particular standards.....	10
2 Normative references	10
3 Terms and definitions	11
4 General requirements	12
4.1 * Additional requirements for SUPPLY MAINS for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	13
4.2 * Environmental conditions for ME EQUIPMENT	13
4.2.1 General	13
4.2.2 * Environmental conditions of transport and storage between uses	13
4.2.3 * Environmental operating conditions	15
5 * General requirements for testing ME EQUIPMENT.....	17
6 * Classification of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	18
7 ME EQUIPMENT identification, marking and documents	18
7.1 * USABILITY of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.....	18
7.2 * Additional requirements for marking of IP classification	19
7.3 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS	19
7.3.1 Contact information	19
7.3.2 LAY OPERATOR briefing information	20
7.4 Instructions for use	20
7.4.1 Additional requirements for warning and safety notices.....	20
7.4.2 * Additional requirements for an electrical power source	21
7.4.3 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT description.....	21
7.4.4 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT start-up PROCEDURE	21
7.4.5 Additional requirements for operating instructions.....	21
7.4.6 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT messages.....	22
7.4.7 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection and sterilization.....	22
7.4.8 Additional requirements for maintenance	22
7.4.9 Additional requirements for environmental protection	23
7.4.10 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	23
7.5 Technical description	23
7.5.1 PERMANENTLY INSTALLED CLASS I ME EQUIPMENT	23
7.5.2 Additional requirements for professional hygienic maintenance	23
8 Protection against excessive temperatures and other HAZARDS	24
8.1 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	24
8.2 * Additional requirements for sterilization of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	24
8.3 Additional requirements for ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	24
8.3.1 * Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT	24

8.3.2	* Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME SYSTEMS	24
8.4	Additional requirements for interruption of the power supply/SUPPLY MAINS to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEM	25
8.5	Additional requirements for an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE	25
8.5.1	* Indication of state	25
8.5.2	Accessibility of small INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES	26
9	Accuracy of controls and instruments and protection against hazardous outputs	26
10	Construction of ME EQUIPMENT	27
10.1	* Additional requirements for mechanical strength	27
10.1.1	General requirements for mechanical strength	27
10.1.2	* Requirements for mechanical strength for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT	28
10.1.3	* Requirements for mechanical strength for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT	29
10.2	* Additional requirements for an internal electrical power source	31
10.2	Additional requirements for actuating parts of controls of ME EQUIPMENT	31
11	* Protection against strangulation or asphyxiation	31
12	Additional requirements for electromagnetic compatibility ELECTROMAGNETIC EMISSIONS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	31
12.1	Emissions classification	31
12.2	Protection of the PUBLIC MAINS NETWORK	31
12.3	* Additional technical description requirements applicable to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	31
12.4	* Additional requirements applicable to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS specified for use only in a shielded location	31
12.5	* Additional requirements for ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) tests	31
13	Additional requirements for ALARM SYSTEMS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	32
13.1	* Additional requirement for generation of ALARM SIGNALS	32
13.2	* Additional requirement for ALARM SIGNAL volume	33
Annex A (informative)	General guidance and rationale	34
A.1	General guidance	34
A.2	Rationale for particular clauses and subclauses	35
Annex B (informative)	Guide to marking and labelling requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	56
B.1	Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts	56
B.2	ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, general	56
B.3	ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use	57
B.4	ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description	58
Annex C (informative)	Symbols on marking	59
Bibliography	61
Index of defined terms used in this collateral standard	63
Figure 1 – Small finger probe Ø 5,6		18
Figure A.1 – Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature		39
Table 1 – Mechanical strength test applicability, non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE		27
Table 2 – Mechanical strength test applicability, TRANSIT-OPERABLE		28
Table A.1 – Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature		40

Table A.2 – Summary by use of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE ingress of water and particulate matter requirements	49
Table A.3 – Qualitative assessment of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT subjected to shock and vibration	50
Table B.1 – Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts	56
Table B.2 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, general	56
Table B.3 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use	57
Table B.4 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description	58
Table C.1 – General symbols	59

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT –**Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment**

FOREWORD

- 1) The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, IEC publishes International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports, Publicly Available Specifications (PAS) and Guides (hereafter referred to as "IEC Publication(s)"). Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
- 2) The formal decisions or agreements of IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested IEC National Committees.
- 3) IEC Publications have the form of recommendations for international use and are accepted by IEC National Committees in that sense. While all reasonable efforts are made to ensure that the technical content of IEC Publications is accurate, IEC cannot be held responsible for the way in which they are used or for any misinterpretation by any end user.
- 4) In order to promote international uniformity, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC Publications transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional publications. Any divergence between any IEC Publication and the corresponding national or regional publication shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
- 5) IEC itself does not provide any attestation of conformity. Independent certification bodies provide conformity assessment services and, in some areas, access to IEC marks of conformity. IEC is not responsible for any services carried out by independent certification bodies.
- 6) All users should ensure that they have the latest edition of this publication.
- 7) No liability shall attach to IEC or its directors, employees, servants or agents including individual experts and members of its technical committees and IEC National Committees for any personal injury, property damage or other damage of any nature whatsoever, whether direct or indirect, or for costs (including legal fees) and expenses arising out of the publication, use of, or reliance upon, this IEC Publication or any other IEC Publications.
- 8) Attention is drawn to the Normative references cited in this publication. Use of the referenced publications is indispensable for the correct application of this publication.
- 9) Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this IEC Publication may be the subject of patent rights. IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

DISCLAIMER

This Redline version is not an official IEC Standard and is intended only to provide the user with an indication of what changes have been made to the previous version. Only the current version of the standard is to be considered the official document.

This Redline version provides you with a quick and easy way to compare all the changes between this standard and its previous edition. A vertical bar appears in the margin wherever a change has been made. Additions and deletions are displayed in red, with deletions being struck through.

International standard IEC 60601-1-11 has been prepared by a joint working group of IEC subcommittee 62A: Common aspects of electrical equipment used in medical practice of IEC technical committee 62: Electrical equipment in medical practice and ISO subcommittee SC3: Lung ventilators and related devices, of ISO technical committee 121: Anaesthetic and respiratory equipment.

It is published as a double logo standard.

This second edition constitutes a collateral standard to IEC 60601-1 (third edition, including Amendment 1): *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance*, hereafter referred to as the general standard.

This second edition cancels and replaces the first edition of IEC 60601-1-11, published in 2010, and constitutes a technical revision.

The most significant changes with respect to the previous edition include the following modifications:

- correction of test method for relative humidity control at temperatures above 35 °C;
- redrafting of subclauses that altered instead of adding to the general standard or other collateral standards; and
- harmonizing with the changes to the amendments to the general standard and other collateral standards.

The text of this collateral standard is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
62A/959/FDIS	62A/978/RVD

Full information on the voting for the approval of this collateral standard can be found in the report on voting indicated in the above table. In ISO, the standard has been approved by 17 P-members out of 17 having cast a vote.

This publication has been drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

In the IEC 60601 series of publications, collateral standards specify general requirements for safety applicable to:

- a subgroup of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT (e.g. radiological equipment); or
- a specific characteristic of all MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, not fully addressed in the general standard (e.g. ALARM SYSTEMS).

In this collateral standard, the following print types are used:

- requirements and definitions: roman type;
- *test specifications: italic type*;
- informative material appearing outside of tables, such as notes, examples and references: in smaller type. Normative text of tables is also in a smaller type;
- TERMS DEFINED IN CLAUSE 3 OF THE GENERAL STANDARD, IN THIS COLLATERAL STANDARD OR AS NOTED: SMALL CAPITALS.

In referring to the structure of this collateral standard, the term

- “clause” means one of the numbered divisions within the table of contents, inclusive of all subdivisions (e.g. Clause 7 includes subclauses 7.1, 7.2, etc.);
- “subclause” means a numbered subdivision of a clause (e.g. 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3.1 are all subclauses of Clause 7).

References to clauses within this standard are preceded by the term “Clause” followed by the clause number. References to subclauses within this collateral standard are by number only.

In this standard, the conjunctive “or” is used as an “inclusive or” so a statement is true if any combination of the conditions is true.

The verbal forms used in this standard conform to usage described in Annex H of the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2. For the purposes of this standard, the auxiliary verb:

- “shall” means that compliance with a requirement or a test is mandatory for compliance with this standard;
- “should” means that compliance with a requirement or a test is recommended but is not mandatory for compliance with this standard;
- “may” is used to describe a permissible way to achieve compliance with a requirement or test.

Clauses, subclauses and definitions for which a rationale is provided in informative Annex A are marked with an asterisk (*).

A list of all parts of the IEC 60601 series, published under the general title: *Medical electrical equipment*, can be found on the IEC website.

The committee has decided that the contents of this publication will remain unchanged until the stability date indicated on the IEC web site under “<http://webstore.iec.ch>” in the data related to the specific publication. At this date, the publication will be

- reconfirmed,
- withdrawn,
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

NOTE The attention of Member Bodies and National Committees is drawn to the fact that equipment manufacturers and testing organizations may need a transitional period following publication of a new, amended or revised ISO or IEC publication in which to make products in accordance with the new requirements and to equip themselves for conducting new or revised tests. It is the recommendation of the committee that the content of this publication be adopted for mandatory implementation nationally not earlier than 3 years from the date of publication.

IMPORTANT – The ‘colour inside’ logo on the cover page of this publication indicates that it contains colours which are considered to be useful for the correct understanding of its contents. Users should therefore print this document using a colour printer.

INTRODUCTION

Medical practice is increasingly using MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT and MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS for monitoring, treatment or diagnosis of PATIENTS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT (see 3.1). The safety of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT in this uncontrolled environment with regard to the electrical installation and its related safety and protection means is a cause for concern.

The potential lack of training of the LAY OPERATOR and possibly of those supervising the use of the MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT or MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEM and their level of education need to be addressed in the development of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS and in the relevant marking on the equipment itself so that this material can be understood. This collateral standard gives special guidance on how this should be addressed in the instructions for use.

This collateral standard was developed with contributions from clinicians, engineers and regulators. The terminology, requirements, general recommendations and guidance of this collateral standard are intended to be useful for MANUFACTURERS of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT and MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS and for technical committees responsible for the development of particular standards.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11:2015 (RLV) 2015

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT –

Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment

1 Scope, object and related standards

1.1 * Scope

This International Standard applies to the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT and MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS, ~~hereafter referred to as ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS, which are intended by their MANUFACTURER for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, as defined in 3.1, and specified by the MANUFACTURER in the instructions for use. This International Standard applies regardless of whether the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR or by trained healthcare personnel.~~

~~NOTE 1 The HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS can also be intended for use in other environments, for example, in a professional healthcare facility includes:~~

- ~~– the dwelling place in which a PATIENT lives;~~
- ~~– other places where PATIENTS are present both indoors and outdoors, excluding professional healthcare facility environments where OPERATORS with medical training are continually available when PATIENTS are present.~~

~~This International Standard does not apply to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended solely for use in the EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES ENVIRONMENT, covered by IEC 60601-1-12 or solely for use in professional healthcare facilities covered by IEC 60601-1 without the additions of IEC 60601-1-12 or this collateral standard. Nonetheless, ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS can be intended for multiple use environments, and as such, if also intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, are within the scope of this standard.~~

~~EXAMPLE ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended for both the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT and the professional healthcare facility environment.~~

~~NOTE 2 HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS can frequently be used in locations with unreliable electrical sources and poor electrical grounding.~~

1.2 Object

The object of this collateral standard is to specify general requirements that are in addition to those of the general standard and to serve as the basis for particular standards.

1.3 Related standards

1.3.1 IEC 60601-1

For ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS, this collateral standard complements IEC 60601-1.

When referring to IEC 60601-1 or to this collateral standard, either individually or in combination, the following conventions are used:

- "the general standard" designates IEC 60601-1 alone;

- "this collateral standard" designates IEC 60601-1-11 alone;
- "this standard" designates the combination of the general standard and this collateral standard.

1.3.2 Particular standards

A requirement in a particular standard takes priority over the corresponding requirement in this collateral standard.

2 Normative references

The following documents, in whole or in part, are normatively referenced in this document and are indispensable for its application. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

NOTE 1 The way in which these referenced documents are cited in normative requirements determines the extent (in whole or in part) to which they apply.

NOTE 2 Informative references are listed in the bibliography on page 61.

CISPR 11:2009, *Industrial, scientific and medical equipment – Radio-frequency disturbance characteristics – Limits and methods of measurement*

IEC 60068-2-27:2008, *Environmental testing – Part 2-27: Tests – Test Ea and guidance: Shock*

IEC 60068-2-31:2008, *Environmental testing – Part 2-31: Tests – Test Ec: Rough handling shocks, primarily for equipment-type specimens*

IEC 60068-2-64:2008, *Environmental testing Part 2-64: Tests – Test Fh: Vibration, broadband random and guidance*

IEC 60529:1989, *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*

~~Amendment 1 (1999) ¹⁾~~

IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999

IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 ²⁾

IEC 60601-1:2005, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance*

IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012 ³⁾

IEC 60601-1-2:2007 2014, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic compatibility disturbances – Requirements and tests*

IEC 60601-1-6:2010, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-6: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral standard: Usability*

IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013 ⁴⁾

¹⁾ ~~There exists a consolidated edition 2.1 including IEC 60529:1989 and Amendment 1 (1999).~~

²⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 2.2 (2013) including IEC 60529:1989 and its Amendment 1 (1999) and Amendment 2 (2013).

³⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 3.1(2012) including IEC 60601-1:2005 and its Amendment 1 (2012).

⁴⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 3.1 (2013) including IEC 60601-1-6:2010 and its Amendment 1 (2013).

IEC 60601-1-8:2006, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-8: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral standard: General requirements, tests and guidance for alarm systems in medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems*
IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 ⁵⁾

IEC 60601-1-12:2014, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems intended for use in the emergency medical services environment*

IEC 62366:2007, *Medical devices – Application of usability engineering to medical devices*
IEC 62366:2007/AMD1:2014 ⁶⁾

ISO 7000, *Graphical symbols for use on equipment — Registered symbols*. Available from:
<http://www.graphical-symbols.info/equipment>

ISO 7010:2011, *Graphical symbols – Safety colours and safety signs — Registered safety signs*

ISO 7010:2011/AMD1:2012

ISO 7010:2011/AMD2:2012

ISO 7010:2011/AMD3:2012

ISO 7010:2011/AMD4:2013

ISO 7010:2011/AMD5:2014

ISO 15223-1:2012, *Medical devices — Symbols to be used with medical device labels, labelling and information to be supplied — Part 1: General requirements*

3 Terms and definitions

For the purposes of this document, the terms and definitions given in IEC 60601-1:2005 and IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, IEC 60601-1-2:2007 2014, IEC 60601-1-6:2010 and IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013, IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012, IEC 60601-1-12:2014, IEC 62366:2007 and the following definitions apply.

NOTE 1 Where the terms “voltage” and “current” are used in this document, they mean the r.m.s. values of an alternating, direct or composite voltage or current unless stated otherwise.

NOTE 2 The term “electrical equipment” is used to mean ME EQUIPMENT or other electrical equipment. This standard also uses the term “equipment” to mean ME EQUIPMENT or other electrical or non-electrical equipment in the context of an ME SYSTEM.

NOTE 3 An index of defined terms used in this collateral standard is found beginning on page 63.

3.1

~~* BODY-WORN~~

~~term referring to TRANSPORTABLE equipment whose INTENDED USE includes operation while being worn by a PATIENT or attached to a PATIENT'S clothing~~

~~NOTE TRANSPORTABLE equipment can be both BODY-WORN and HAND-HELD.~~

3.1

HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT

dwelling place in which a PATIENT lives or other places where PATIENTS are present, excluding professional healthcare facility environments where OPERATORS with medical training are continually available when PATIENTS are present

⁵⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 2.1 (2012) including IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and its Amendment 1 (2012).

⁶⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 2.1 (2014) including IEC 62366:2007 and Amendment 1 (2014).

EXAMPLES In a car, bus, train, boat or plane, in a wheelchair or walking outdoors.

Note 1 to entry: Professional healthcare facilities include hospitals, physician offices, freestanding surgical centres, dental offices, freestanding birthing centres, limited care facilities, first aid rooms or rescue rooms, multiple treatment facilities and emergency medical services.

Note 2 to entry: For the purpose of this collateral standard, nursing homes are considered HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENTS.

Note 3 to entry: Other places where a PATIENT is present include the outdoor environment, while working and in vehicles.

3.2

* LAY

<adj> term referring to non-professional or professional without relevant specialized training

EXAMPLES LAY OPERATOR, LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION.

3.4

~~LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM~~

~~ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM that includes at least one FUNCTION that is intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT and the failure of which is likely to lead to serious injury or death of a PATIENT~~

~~[IEC 60601-1-2:2007, definition 3.18, modified]~~

~~EXAMPLE A ventilator for a ventilator-dependent PATIENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.~~

3.3

SHELF LIFE

maximum period of time that an item can be stored prior to its first use under the conditions described in its labelling and remain suitable for use

3.4

TRANSIT-OPERABLE

<adj> term referring to TRANSPORTABLE equipment whose INTENDED USE includes operation while it is being moved

EXAMPLES TRANSPORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is BODY-WORN, HAND-HELD, attached to a wheelchair, or used in a car, bus, train, boat or plane.

Note 1 to entry: For the purpose of this standard, TRANSIT-OPERABLE use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT can include use indoors, outdoors and in vehicles.

3.7

~~USABILITY ENGINEERING~~

~~application of knowledge about human behaviour, abilities, limitations, and other characteristics to the design of tools, machines, ME EQUIPMENT, devices, systems, tasks, jobs, and environments to achieve adequate USABILITY~~

3.8

~~USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE~~

~~set of RECORDS and other documents that are produced by USABILITY ENGINEERING activities~~

3.9

~~USABILITY SPECIFICATION~~

~~documentation defining the OPERATOR-EQUIPMENT INTERFACE requirements related to USABILITY~~

3.10

~~VALIDATION~~

~~confirmation, through the provision of objective evidence, that the requirements for a specific intended use or application have been fulfilled~~

~~NOTE 1 The term “validated” is used to designate the corresponding status.~~

~~NOTE 2 The use conditions for VALIDATION can be real or simulated.~~

~~[ISO 9000:2000, definition 3.8.5]~~

4 General requirements

4.1 * Additional requirements for SUPPLY MAINS for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

For ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, the characteristics of the SUPPLY MAINS specified in 4.10.2 of the general standard apply, ~~except for replacement of the fifth dash as follows:~~ with the following additions.

~~— for non-LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS, SUPPLY MAINS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall be assumed to have the following characteristics: no voltage in excess of 110 % or lower than 85 % of the NOMINAL voltage between any of the conductors of the system or between any of these conductors and earth.~~

~~— for LIFE-SUPPORTING For ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT, SUPPLY MAINS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall be assumed to have the following characteristics: no voltage in excess of 110 % or lower than 80 % of the NOMINAL voltage between any of the conductors of the system or between any of these conductors and earth.~~

The RATED range of NOMINAL voltage of the ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall include at least 12,4 V to 15,1 V for operation from 12 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS and at least 24,8 V to 30,3 V for operation from 24 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS.

ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE during and following a 30 s dip to 10 V from a 12 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS and during and following a 30 s dip to 20 V for operation from a 24 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS.

4.2 * Environmental conditions for ME EQUIPMENT

4.2.1 General

All environmental tests at temperatures below +5 °C need not be performed with humidity control of the test chamber.

NOTE In IEC 60601-1:2005 and IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, the MANUFACTURER specifies the permissible conditions of use, including conditions for transport and storage in the technical description (see 7.9.3.1, second dash). These conditions are referenced in requirements for testing throughout the general standard, (e.g. 5.3 and 11.1.1).

4.2.2 * Environmental conditions of transport and storage between uses

The instructions for use shall indicate the permissible environmental conditions of transport and storage of ME EQUIPMENT after the ME EQUIPMENT has been removed from its protective packaging and subsequently between uses.

Unless otherwise indicated in the instructions for use or if the ME EQUIPMENT is STATIONARY, the ME EQUIPMENT shall ~~comply with this standard and shall~~ remain operational in NORMAL USE within its specification ~~and the requirements of this standard~~ after transport or storage in the following environmental ~~temperature~~ range:

- – 25 °C ~~without relative humidity control;~~ to + 5 °C, and
- ~~+70~~ + 5 °C to + 35 °C at a relative humidity up to ~~93~~ 90 %, non-condensing;
- > 35 °C to 70 °C at a water vapour pressure up to 50 hPa

after having been removed from its protective packaging and subsequently between uses.

NOTE 1 This represents class 7K3 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7] 7).

If the instructions for use state a more restricted range of environmental transport and storage conditions between uses, these environmental conditions shall be:

- justified in the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE;
- marked on the ME EQUIPMENT, unless such marking is not practicable, in which case the more restricted range need only be disclosed in the instructions for use; and
- marked on the carrying case, if the instructions for use indicate that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be transported or stored in a carrying case between uses.

Symbols 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01)), 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01)) or 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the temperature range (see Table C.1, symbols 2, 3 and 4). Symbol 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the humidity range (see Table C.1, symbol 5) and symbol 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the atmospheric pressure range (see Table C.1, symbol 6). Where ME EQUIPMENT has different markings for conditions of transport and storage between uses, continuous operating conditions (see 4.2.3.1) and transient operating conditions (see 4.2.3.2), those markings shall be accompanied by supplementary marking (e.g. appropriate wording) except where the respective applicability would be obvious (e.g. limits for transport and storage between uses on the carrying case and limits for operation on the ME EQUIPMENT itself).

Compliance is checked by the following test and, when a more restricted range is stated in the instructions for use, inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

a) *Prepare the ME EQUIPMENT for transport or storage according to instructions for use.*

EXAMPLES Removal of batteries, emptying fluid reservoirs.

b) *Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental transport and storage conditions (temperature $_{-4}^{0}$ °C):*

- *for at least ~~24~~ 16 h; or*
- *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.*

c) *Then expose the ME EQUIPMENT to 34 °C ± 4 °C and 90 % – 0 % + 6 % relative humidity until the test chamber reaches equilibrium. The transition from low to high temperature conditions should be made slowly enough to provide a non-condensing environment. Hold for at least 2 h.*

d) *Then expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified environmental transport and storage conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, (temperature $_{0}^{+4}$ °C ~~and relative humidity ± 3 %~~) for:*

- *for at least ~~24~~ 16 h; or*
- *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h. ~~The transition from low to high conditions should be made slowly enough to provide a non-condensing environment.~~*

NOTE 2 The intent of specifying a minimum duration of the exposure to both the low and high temperature conditions is to ensure that the entire ME EQUIPMENT reaches the stated conditions.

- e) *At the end of this conditioning period, allow the ME EQUIPMENT to return and stabilize at the operating conditions of NORMAL USE.*
- f) *Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.*

7) Figures in square brackets refer to the Bibliography.

4.2.3 * Environmental operating conditions

4.2.3.1 Continuous operating conditions

The instructions for use shall indicate the permissible environmental operating conditions of the ME EQUIPMENT.

NOTE 1 The environmental operating conditions should be marked on TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT, unless such marking is not practicable, in which case the environmental operating conditions need only be disclosed in the instructions for use.

Unless otherwise indicated in the instructions for use, the ME EQUIPMENT shall comply with its specifications and all the requirements of this standard when operated in NORMAL USE under the following environmental operating conditions:

- a temperature range of + 5 °C to + 40 °C;
- a relative humidity range of 15 % to ~~93~~ 90 %, non-condensing, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa; and
- an atmospheric pressure range of 700 hPa to 1 060 hPa.

NOTE 2 This represents class 7K1 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

If the instructions for use state a more restricted range of environmental operating conditions, these conditions shall be:

- justified in the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE;
- marked on the ME EQUIPMENT, unless such marking is not practicable, in which case the more restricted range need only be disclosed in the instructions for use; and
- marked on the carrying case if the instructions for use indicate that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be operated in a carrying case.

Symbols 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01)), 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01)) or 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the temperature range (see Table C.1, symbols 2, 3 and 4). Symbol 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the humidity range (see Table C.1, symbol 5) and symbol 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the atmospheric pressure range (see Table C.1, symbol 6). Where ME EQUIPMENT has different markings for continuous operating conditions and transient operating conditions (4.2.3.2), those markings shall be accompanied by supplementary marking (e.g. appropriate wording).

The ME EQUIPMENT shall comply with its specifications and all the requirements of this standard when operated in NORMAL USE under the specified environmental operating conditions.

Compliance is checked by the following test and, when a more restricted range is stated in the instructions for use, inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE:

- a) *Set up the ME EQUIPMENT for operation according to its INTENDED USE.*
- b) *Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to ~~the ambient conditions for~~ 20 °C ± 4 °C:*
 - *for at least 6 h, or*
 - *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.*
- c) *Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.*
- d) *Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while at the lowest specified atmospheric pressure. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.*

- e) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while at the highest specified atmospheric pressure. *The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.*

NOTE 3 For ME EQUIPMENT that is pressure-sensitive (e.g. utilizes or measures gas or pressures or uses membrane switches), evaluation of BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while the pressure changes in either direction can be needed.

- f) *Relieve the pressure in the pressure chamber.*

- g) Cool the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental operating conditions (temperature 0_{-4}°C and relative humidity less than or equal to 15 %).

NOTE 4 Some test chambers can require a mode change to reach this combination of temperature and humidity.

- h) Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at its lowest specified environmental operating conditions:

- for at least 6 h, or
- confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.

- i) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. *The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.*

- j) Warm the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified continuous environmental operating conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, (temperature $+4_0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ~~and relative humidity $\pm 3\%$~~). *The transition from low to high conditions should be made slowly enough to provide a non-condensing environment.*

- k) Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at ~~its highest specified environmental operating~~ the conditions of j):

- for at least 6 h, or
- confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.

- l) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. *The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT or dielectric strength testing.*

4.2.3.2 * Environmental shock to TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

If the instructions for use state a wider range of continuous environmental operating conditions than those indicated in 4.2.3.1, the TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE in the presence of condensation and thermal shock resulting from rapid changes in environmental temperature and humidity during INTENDED USE.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

- a) Set up the ME EQUIPMENT for operation according to its INTENDED USE.
- b) Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental operating conditions (temperature 0_{-4}°C and relative humidity less than or equal to 15 %).
- c) Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at its lowest specified environmental operating conditions:
- for at least 6 h, or
 - confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.
- d) Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified environmental operating conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, within 5 min (temperature $+4_0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ~~and relative humidity $\pm 3\%$~~).
- e) While maintaining the environment of the ME EQUIPMENT to the conditions in d), evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it continues to provide BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE until the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY or

for at least 2 h. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT or dielectric strength testing because of the pollution degree ratings required by the general standard.

A separate test sample may be used for the following tests.

- f) Set up the ME EQUIPMENT for operation according to its INTENDED USE.
- g) Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified environmental operating conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, (temperature $+4_0^{\circ}\text{C}$ and relative humidity $\pm 3\%$).
- h) Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at its highest specified environmental operating conditions:
 - for at least 6 h, or
 - confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.
- i) Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental operating conditions (temperature -4_0°C and relative humidity less than or equal to 15 %) within 5 min.
- j) While maintaining the environment of the ME EQUIPMENT to the conditions in i), evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it continues to provide BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE until the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY or for at least 2 h. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT or dielectric strength testing.

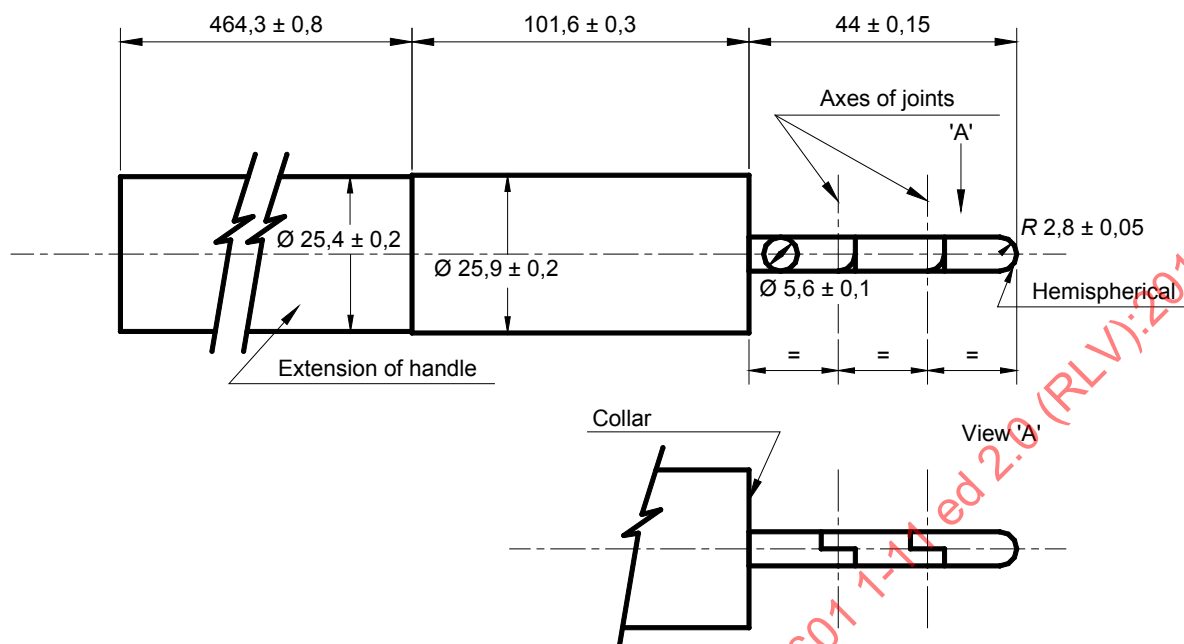
NOTE While the ME EQUIPMENT is warming or cooling, the evaluation of BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE is repeated for two hours or until THERMAL STABILITY is reached.

5 * General requirements for testing ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 5.9.2.1 of the general standard, parts of ME EQUIPMENT that are to be regarded as ACCESSIBLE PARTS are identified by inspection and, where necessary, by testing. In case of doubt, a part of ME EQUIPMENT that is to be regarded as an ACCESSIBLE PART is determined by a test with the small finger probe shown in Figure 1, applied in a bent or straight position:

- for all positions of the ME EQUIPMENT when operated as in NORMAL USE; and
- after opening ACCESS COVERS and removal of parts, including lamps, fuses and fuse holders, when:
 - i) the ACCESS COVERS can be opened without the use of a TOOL, or
 - ii) the instructions for use instruct a LAY OPERATOR to open the relevant ACCESS COVER.

Dimensions in millimetres



IEC

- Finger: metal material
- Handle: insulating material

NOTE 1 The extension of the handle represents the arm of the child.

The handle is provided with an extension 464,3 mm long, and the probe should be applied with or without this extension, whichever is the more onerous condition. Both joints shall permit movement in the same plane and the same direction through an angle of 90°.

NOTE 2 This probe is intended to simulate access to hazardous parts by children of 36 months or less.

[IEC 61032:1997 [9], Figure 13]

Figure 1 – Small finger probe Ø 5,6

6 * Classification of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements in 6.2 of the general standard, unless the ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is PERMANENTLY INSTALLED, it:

- shall be CLASS II or INTERNALLY POWERED;
- shall not have a FUNCTIONAL EARTH TERMINAL; and
- if equipped with APPLIED PARTS, shall have either TYPE BF APPLIED PARTS or TYPE CF APPLIED PARTS.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

7 ME EQUIPMENT identification, marking and documents

7.1 * USABILITY of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

In addition to the requirements of 7.1.1 of the general standard, the USABILITY of the identification, marking and ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS intended for the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION shall be evaluated based on an OPERATOR PROFILE that includes a ~~maximum~~ minimum of eight years of education.

ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT should be designed to be simple to use and not require reference to complex ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the results of the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

7.2 * Additional requirements for marking of IP classification

~~Notwithstanding the requirements of 7.2.9 of the general standard, the ENCLOSURE of ME EQUIPMENT shall be marked with the IP classification required by 8.3.1. If some or all of the protection against the ingress of water or particulate matter is provided by a carrying case, then the degree of protection provided by the ENCLOSURE shall be marked on the ENCLOSURE and the degree of protection Table C.1 provided by the carrying case shall be marked on the carrying case.~~

In addition to the requirements of 7.2.9 of the general standard, if some or all of the protection against the ingress of water or particulate matter is provided by a carrying case, then

- the ENCLOSURE of the ME EQUIPMENT shall be marked with its degree of protection and safety sign ISO 7010-W001 (see IEC 60601-1:2005, Table D.2, safety sign 2),
 - as well as with 'keep dry', or
 - the symbol ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.4 (ISO 7000-0626 (2004-01)) (see Table C.1, symbol 1).
- the carrying case shall be marked with its degree of protection.

A carrying case that is not intended to provide protection against the ingress of water or particulate matter need not be marked.

EXAMPLE If for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT, the ENCLOSURE provides the protection against the ingress of particulate matter and the carrying case provides the protection against the ingress of water, the ENCLOSURE of the ME EQUIPMENT would be marked IP20 and the carrying case would be marked IP02.

~~If an ENCLOSURE does not provide the minimum required degree protection against the ingress of water, it shall be marked 'keep dry' or with symbol ISO 7000-0626 (2004-01) (see Table C.1, symbol 1).~~

Compliance is checked by inspection and by application of the tests and criteria of 7.1.2 and 7.1.3 of the general standard.

7.3 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

7.3.1 Contact information

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.1 and 16.2 of the general standard, the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS ~~for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR~~ shall indicate that the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION should contact the MANUFACTURER or the MANUFACTURER'S representative:

- for assistance, if needed, in setting up, using or maintaining the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM; or
- to report unexpected operation or events.

The ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS shall include a postal address and either a telephone number or web address through which the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION can contact the MANUFACTURER or the MANUFACTURER'S representative.

7.3.2 LAY OPERATOR briefing information

When appropriate in addition to the requirements of 7.9.1 and 16.2 of the general standard, the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS shall include the details necessary for the healthcare professional to brief the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION on any known contraindication(s) to the use of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM and any precautions to be taken. This shall include:

- precautions to be taken in the event of changes in the performance of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM;
- precautions to be taken regarding the exposure of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM to reasonably foreseeable environmental conditions (e.g. to magnetic fields, electromagnetic fields, external electrical influences, ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE, pressure or variations in pressure, acceleration, thermal ignition sources);
- adequate information regarding any medicinal substances that the ME EQUIPMENT is designed to administer, including any limitations in the choice of substances to be delivered;
- information on any medicinal substances or human blood derivatives incorporated into the ME EQUIPMENT or ACCESSORIES as an integral part; and
- the degree of accuracy claimed for ME EQUIPMENT with a measuring function.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.

7.4 Instructions for use

7.4.1 Additional requirements for warning and safety notices

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.2 and 16.2 c) of the general standard for each warning and safety sign, the instructions for use shall describe the nature of the HAZARD, likely consequences that could occur if the advice is not followed, and the precautions for reducing the RISK.

If applicable, the instructions for use shall address the issues of:

- strangulation due to cables and hoses, particularly due to excessive length;
EXAMPLE 1 Strangulation resulting from baby or child entanglement in monitoring cables.
EXAMPLE 2 Strangulation resulting from breathing system hoses.
- small parts being inhaled or swallowed;
EXAMPLE 3 Choking resulting from a child swallowing a small part that has become detached from the ME EQUIPMENT.
- potential allergic reactions to accessible materials used in the ME EQUIPMENT;
EXAMPLE 4 Natural rubber latex sensitivity.
- contact injuries.

EXAMPLE 5 Skin irritation due to prolonged exposure to APPLIED PARTS or other ACCESSORIES.

If applicable, the instructions for use shall include warnings to the effect that it can be unsafe to:

- use ACCESSORIES, detachable parts and materials not described in the instructions for use (see 7.9.2.14 of the general standard);
- interconnect this equipment with other equipment not described in the instructions for use (see 16.2 c) indent 9) of the general standard);
- modify the equipment;
- use the ME EQUIPMENT outside its carrying case if some part of the protection required by this standard is provided by that carrying case (see 8.3.1 and 10.1).

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use and inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

7.4.2 * Additional requirements for an electrical power source

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.4 of the general standard, if ME EQUIPMENT is equipped with an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE and the BASIC SAFETY or ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE is dependent on the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the instructions for use shall describe:

- the typical operation time or number of PROCEDURES;
- the typical service life of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE; and
- for a rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the behavior of the ME EQUIPMENT while the rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is charging.

EXAMPLE 1 Number of years after which a rechargeable battery needs to be replaced.

EXAMPLE 2 Number of discharge cycles after which a rechargeable battery needs to be replaced.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.3 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT description

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.5 of the general standard, the instructions for use for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR shall include easily understood diagrams, illustrations or photographs of the fully assembled and ready-to-operate ME EQUIPMENT including all controls, visual INFORMATION SIGNALS, and indicators provided with the ME EQUIPMENT (see 7.1).

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.4 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT start-up PROCEDURE

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.8 of the general standard, the instructions for use shall include:

- easily understood diagrams, illustrations, or photographs showing proper connection of the PATIENT to the ME EQUIPMENT, ACCESSORIES and other equipment (see 7.1); and
- the time from switching “ON” until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for NORMAL USE, if that time exceeds 15 s (see 15.4.4 of the general standard).
- the time required for the ME EQUIPMENT to warm from the minimum storage temperature between uses (4.2.2) until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for its INTENDED USE when the ambient temperature is 20 °C; and
- the time required for the ME EQUIPMENT to cool from the maximum storage temperature between uses (4.2.2) until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for its INTENDED USE when the ambient temperature is 20 °C.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.5 Additional requirements for operating instructions

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.9 of the general standard, the instructions for use for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR shall include a description of generally known conditions in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT that can unacceptably affect the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of the ME EQUIPMENT and the steps that can be taken by the LAY OPERATOR to identify and resolve these conditions, and shall include, where applicable, at least the following issues:

- the effects of lint, dust, light (including sunlight), etc.;

- a list of known devices or other sources that can potentially cause interference problems;

EXAMPLE 1 Heat from a fireplace or radiant heater.

EXAMPLE 2 Moisture from a nebuliser or steam kettle.

- the effects of degraded sensors and electrodes, or loosened electrodes, which can degrade performance or cause other problems;
- the effects caused by pets, pests or children.

The instructions for use shall explain the meaning of the IP classification marked on the ME EQUIPMENT and, if applicable, on any carrying case provided with the ME EQUIPMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use and by inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

7.4.6 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT messages

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.10 of the general standard, the instructions for use shall include a troubleshooting guide for use when there are indications of a ME EQUIPMENT malfunction during start-up or operation. The troubleshooting guide shall disclose the necessary steps to be taken in the event of each TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION.

NOTE See also IEC 60601-1-8.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.7 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection and sterilization

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.12 and 16.2 c), indent 3 of the general standard, for ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS, their parts or ACCESSORIES that are intended for other than single use and that can become contaminated through contact with the PATIENT or with body fluids or expired gases during INTENDED USE, the instructions for use shall:

either,

- indicate the frequency of cleaning, cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization, as appropriate, of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS, parts or ACCESSORIES used on the same PATIENT including methods for rinsing, drying, handling and storage between uses (see 8.1 and 8.2); and

EXAMPLE 1 Periodic cleaning and disinfection of a breathing system to prevent infection of a PATIENT during chronic care.

- if intended for multiple PATIENT use, indicate that it is necessary to clean and disinfect or clean and sterilize the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS, parts or ACCESSORIES between uses on different PATIENTS, including methods for rinsing, drying, handling and storage until re-use (see 8.1 and 8.2);

EXAMPLE 2 Cleaning and disinfection of a thermometer following use to prevent PATIENT cross infection.

or,

- indicate that the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES require professional hygienic maintenance prior to re-use and provide contact details for the source of these services (see 7.5.2).

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.8 Additional requirements for maintenance

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.13 of the general standard the instructions for use shall include:

- the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of the ME EQUIPMENT;
- the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT; and
- where the SHELF LIFE is less than the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE, the SHELF LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.9 Additional requirements for environmental protection

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.15 of the general standard, the instructions for use shall include

~~— information concerning the proper disposal of the ME EQUIPMENT, its parts or ACCESSORIES (see IEC 60601-1-9); and,~~

— where applicable, a statement to the effect that the LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION must contact its local authorities to determine the proper method of disposal of potentially bio-hazardous parts and ACCESSORIES.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.10 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

For ME EQUIPMENT or an ME SYSTEM utilizing a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM the instructions for use shall include the recommended placement of the remote parts of the DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM to ensure that an OPERATOR can be notified at all times by an appropriate element of the DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM within its specified range.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.5 Technical description

7.5.1 PERMANENTLY INSTALLED CLASS I ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.3.1 of the general standard to ensure that PERMANENTLY INSTALLED CLASS I ME EQUIPMENT is PROPERLY INSTALLED, the technical description shall include:

- a warning to the effect that the ME EQUIPMENT installation, including a correct PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION, must only be carried out by qualified SERVICE PERSONNEL;
- the specifications of the PERMANENTLY INSTALLED PROTECTIVE EARTH CONDUCTOR;
- a warning to verify the integrity of the external protective earthing system;
- a warning to connect and verify that the PROTECTIVE EARTH TERMINAL of the PERMANENTLY INSTALLED ME EQUIPMENT is connected to the external protective earthing system.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the technical description.

7.5.2 Additional requirements for professional hygienic maintenance

For ME EQUIPMENT or ACCESSORIES that require professional hygienic maintenance prior to re-use (see 7.4.7), the technical description shall include methods for cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization:

- before and after any type of service PROCEDURE;
- when the ME EQUIPMENT is transferred to another PATIENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the technical description.

8 Protection against excessive temperatures and other HAZARDS

8.1 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements of 11.6.6 of the general standard, the cleaning or cleaning and disinfection PROCESSES intended to be performed in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT by a LAY OPERATOR shall be capable of being performed by a LAY OPERATOR in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT (see 7.4.7). The USABILITY of each such PROCESS as it pertains to a LAY OPERATOR shall be investigated by the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.

8.2 * Additional requirements for sterilization of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements of 11.6.7 of the general standard, the cleaning and sterilization PROCESSES intended to be performed in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT by a LAY OPERATOR shall be capable of being performed by a LAY OPERATOR in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT (see 7.4.7). The USABILITY of each such PROCESS as it pertains to a LAY OPERATOR shall be investigated by the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.

8.3 Additional requirements for ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

8.3.1 * Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 11.6.5 of the general standard, TRANSIT-OPERABLE, HAND-HELD, and BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE after undergoing the test of IEC 60529:1989 ~~for IP22~~ and IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 for at least IP22. All other ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE after undergoing the test of IEC 60529:1989 and IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 for at least IP21. For PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is only intended to be used ~~with~~ while inside a carrying case, this requirement may be met while the ME EQUIPMENT is inside the carrying case.

NOTE These levels of ENCLOSURE stresses are considered to be reflective of NORMAL USE in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by application of the tests of IEC 60529:1989 and IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 with the ME EQUIPMENT placed in the least favourable position of NORMAL USE. Confirm that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE are maintained.

8.3.2 * Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements for ENCLOSURES in 16.4 of the general standard, the ENCLOSURES of the non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of the ME SYSTEMS shall provide the degree of protection against harmful ingress of water or particulate matter equivalent to equipment complying with their respective IEC or ISO safety standards.

Compliance is checked by the tests of IEC 60529:1989 with the equipment placed in the least favorable position of NORMAL USE and by inspection.

NOTE—Ingress tests that have already been performed on individual equipment of an ME SYSTEM according to relevant standards need not be repeated. See also 5.1 of the general standard.

8.4 Additional requirements for interruption of the power supply/SUPPLY MAINS to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEM

In addition to the requirements of 11.8 and 16.8 of the general standard, ~~a LIFE-SUPPORTING~~ ME EQUIPMENT OR ME SYSTEM **with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT** shall maintain its ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE for a sufficient time or for a sufficient number of PROCEDURES, when loss or failure of the SUPPLY MAINS or **near depletion of the** INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE occurs. The time or number of PROCEDURES remaining shall allow alternative life-supporting methods to be employed.

NOTE 1 Requirements for loss or failure of SUPPLY MAINS for very short periods are found in IEC 60601-1-2.

An INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be utilized to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. Independent means may also be utilized to provide ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

EXAMPLE 1 Manually-driven pump or resuscitator.

The instructions for use shall disclose the time or number of PROCEDURES available following a loss or failure of the **SUPPLY MAINS or near depletion of the** INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER ~~supply SOURCE~~. The instructions for use shall describe the alternative life-supporting methods to be employed. The technical description shall describe methods that can be employed for longer periods.

NOTE 2 Electrical power supply failure includes failure of the SUPPLY MAINS or any **near depletion of** INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES.

If an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is not used, ~~the LIFE-SUPPORTING~~ ME EQUIPMENT OR ME SYSTEMS **with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT** shall be equipped with an ALARM SYSTEM that includes at least a MEDIUM PRIORITY ALARM CONDITION that indicates a power supply failure.

EXAMPLE 2 The SUPPLY MAINS voltage falls below the minimum value required for normal operation.

If an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is used, ~~the LIFE-SUPPORTING~~ ME EQUIPMENT OR ME SYSTEMS **with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT** shall be equipped with an automatic switchover to the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE ~~and an ALARM SYSTEM that includes at least a LOW PRIORITY ALARM CONDITION that indicates the switchover to the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.~~

NOTE 3 A visual indication of this charging mode is required in 15.4.4 of the general standard.

If an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is used, ~~the LIFE-SUPPORTING~~ ME EQUIPMENT OR ME SYSTEMS **with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT** shall be equipped with an ALARM SYSTEM that includes at least a MEDIUM PRIORITY TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION that indicates that the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is nearing insufficient remaining power for ME EQUIPMENT ~~or ME SYSTEM~~ operation. This TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION shall provide for a sufficient time or for a sufficient number of PROCEDURES for a LAY OPERATOR to act. A TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION of at least LOW PRIORITY shall remain active until the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is returned to a level that is above the ALARM LIMIT or until it is depleted. It shall not be possible to inactivate the visual ALARM SIGNAL of this TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION.

Compliance is checked by inspection, functional testing and inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

8.5 Additional requirements for an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE

8.5.1 * Indication of state

If the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is essential to maintain BASIC SAFETY or to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE or control the RISKS associated with the loss of ESSENTIAL

PERFORMANCE, the ME EQUIPMENT shall be equipped with a means for the OPERATOR to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.

The state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be indicated as:

- a number of PROCEDURES remaining;
- the remaining operating time;
- the percentage of the remaining operating time or energy; or
- a "fuel" gauge.

The state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be indicated continuously or by OPERATOR action.

The instructions for use shall describe how to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.5.2 Accessibility of small INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES

Means other than labelling shall be provided to prevent the RISK of swallowing coin/button cells. A replaceable button cell shall require the use of a TOOL for replacement.

NOTE For the purposes of this standard, a button cell is considered to be an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE whose overall height is less than its diameter.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

9 Accuracy of controls and instruments and protection against hazardous outputs

In addition to the requirements of 12.2 of the general standard, when performing the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS, the RISKS associated with USABILITY in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT for OPERATOR PROFILES including a LAY OPERATOR shall include consideration of at least:

- changes of controls;
- unexpected movement;
- potential for misconnection;
- potential for improper operation, or unsafe use;
- potential for confusion as to current operational mode;
- change in the transfer of energy or substance;
- exposure to environmental conditions specified in this standard;
- exposure to biological materials; and
- small parts being inhaled or swallowed.

Particular emphasis shall be placed on the limited training of a LAY OPERATOR with respect to the ability to intervene and maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The MANUFACTURER shall include the least capable intended LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION in the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

EXAMPLES LAY OPERATORS with sensory, cognitive, physical limitations or comorbidities.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.

10 Construction of ME EQUIPMENT

10.1 * Additional requirements for mechanical strength

10.1.1 General requirements for mechanical strength

~~Replace Table 28 of the general standard with Table 1 and Table 2.~~ Additions to the mechanical strength applicability of Table 28 of the general standard are indicated in Table 1 and Table 2.

Table 1 – Mechanical strength test applicability, non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE

ME EQUIPMENT usage and type	Test from the general standard	Test from this standard
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and HAND-HELD	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and BODY-WORN	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and PORTABLE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.2)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and MOBILE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.2)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Rough handling (15.3.5)	-
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
FIXED or STATIONARY	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-

Table 2 – Mechanical strength test applicability, TRANSIT-OPERABLE

ME EQUIPMENT usage and type	Test from the general standard	Test from this standard
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and HAND-HELD	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.3 b))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and BODY-WORN	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.3 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and PORTABLE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	-	Free fall (10.1.3 d))
	-	Shock (10.1.3 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and MOBILE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	-	Free fall (10.1.3 d))
	-	Shock (10.1.3 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Rough handling (15.3.5)	-
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
	-	-

10.1.2 * Requirements for mechanical strength for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 15.3 of the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, intended for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use shall have adequate mechanical strength when subjected to mechanical stress caused by NORMAL USE, including pushing, impact, dropping and rough handling. FIXED and STATIONARY ME EQUIPMENT are exempt from the requirements of this subclause.

After the following tests, ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. OPERATOR-resettable protective devices that can be reset without the use of a TOOL may be reset prior to the evaluation of BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

Compliance is checked by performing the following tests:

a) Shock test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-27:2008, using the following conditions:

NOTE 1 This represents Class 7M1 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

- peak acceleration: 150 m/s² (15 g);
- duration: 11 ms;
- pulse shape: half-sine;
- number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total).

b) Broad-band random vibration test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-64:2008, using the following conditions:

NOTE 2 This represents Class 7M1 and 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

- *acceleration amplitude:*
 - 10 Hz to 100 Hz: $1,0 (m/s^2)^2/Hz$;
 - 100 Hz to 200 Hz: – 3 db per octave;
 - 200 Hz to 2 000 Hz: $0,5 (m/s^2)^2/Hz$;
- *duration: 30 min per perpendicular axis (3 total).*

Confirm that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE are maintained.

10.1.3 * Requirements for mechanical strength for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 15.3 of the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, intended for TRANSIT-OPERABLE use, shall have adequate mechanical strength when subjected to mechanical stress caused by NORMAL USE, including pushing, impact, dropping, and rough handling and by rigorous conditions of PATIENT movement as well as transportation by trolleys, carts, road vehicles, trains, ships and aircraft.

After the following tests, ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

NOTE 1 The levels of mechanical stresses utilized in the test methods of this subclause are considered to be reflective of NORMAL USE for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

NOTE 2 ME EQUIPMENT tested and complying with the relevant requirement in this subclause is considered to comply with the corresponding requirement of 10.1.1.

Compliance is checked by performing the following tests:

- a) *For other than HAND-HELD ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, shock test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-27:2008, using the following conditions:*

NOTE 3 This represents Class 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

1) *test type: Type 1;*

- *peak acceleration: $150 m/s^2$ (15 g),*
- *duration: 11 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total);*

or

2) *test type: Type 2;*

- *peak acceleration: $300 m/s^2$ (30 g),*
- *duration: 6 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total).*

- b) *For HAND-HELD ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, shock test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-27:2008, using the following conditions:*

NOTE 4 This represents Class 7M3 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

1) *test type: Type 1;*

- *peak acceleration: $300 m/s^2$ (30 g),*
- *duration: 11 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total);*

or

2) test type: Type 2;

- peak acceleration: 1 000 m/s² (100 g),
- duration: 6 ms,
- pulse shape: half-sine,
- number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total).

c) For ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, broad-band random vibration test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-64:2008, using the following conditions:

NOTE 5 This represents Class 7M1 and 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

- acceleration amplitude:
 - 10 Hz to 100 Hz: 1,0 (m/s²)²/Hz,
 - 100 Hz to 200 Hz: -3 db per octave,
 - 200 Hz to 2 000 Hz: 0,5 (m/s²)²/Hz,
- duration: 30 min per perpendicular axis (3 total).

d) For PORTABLE and MOBILE ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, free fall to IEC 60068-2-31:2008, using PROCEDURE 1 and the following conditions:

NOTE 6 This represents Class 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

- fall height:
 - for mass ≤ 1 kg, 0,25 m,
 - for mass > 1 kg and ≤ 10 kg, 0,1 m,
 - for mass > 10 kg and ≤ 50 kg, 0,05 m,
 - for mass > 50 kg, 0,01 m,
- number of falls: 2 in each specified attitude.

For PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is intended to be used only with a carrying case, that case may be applied to the equipment during this test.

Confirm that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE are maintained.

~~10.2 * Additional requirements for an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE~~

~~In addition to the requirements of 15.4.3 of the general standard, if the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is essential to maintain BASIC SAFETY or maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE or control the RISKS associated with the loss of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE, the ME EQUIPMENT shall be equipped with a means for the OPERATOR to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.~~

~~The state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be indicated as:~~

- ~~— a number of procedures remaining;~~
- ~~— the remaining operating time;~~
- ~~— the percentage of the remaining operating time or energy; or~~
- ~~— a "fuel" gauge.~~

~~The state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be indicated continuously or by OPERATOR action.~~

~~The instructions for use shall describe how to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.~~

~~Compliance is checked by inspection.~~

10.2 Additional requirements for actuating parts of controls of ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of ~~15.4.6.1 b)~~ 15.4.6.2 of the general standard for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR, controls of ME EQUIPMENT that can affect BASIC SAFETY or ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE shall be protected from accidental or unauthorized changes or adjustments.

NOTE 1 Unauthorized changes or adjustments relate to modifications made without authorization of the intended OPERATOR or RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION.

EXAMPLE A child playing with the controls.

NOTE 2 Means to prevent unauthorized changes or adjustments include:

- access controlled by a TOOL;
- access controlled by RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION password and a technical description that is separate from the instructions for use;
- access controlled by individual OPERATOR password;
- access controlled by voice recognition; or
- access controlled by fingerprints.

NOTE 3 For a password to be considered secure, the owner of the password needs to be capable of changing the password.

NOTE 4 Multiple means of restriction can be needed, e.g., one for the RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION and one for each OPERATOR.

OPERATOR-adjustable controls used for calibration shall include a means to prevent unintentional changes from the intended position.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

11 * Protection against strangulation or asphyxiation

Means shall be provided to control the RISK of strangulation and asphyxiation of the PATIENT and others to an acceptable level.

EXAMPLE 1 By routing wires or tubing.

EXAMPLE 2 Using retention devices.

EXAMPLE 3 Providing the option of multiple length ACCESSORIES.

EXAMPLE 4 Not providing removable small parts for ME EQUIPMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

12 Additional requirements for ELECTROMAGNETIC ~~compatibility~~ EMISSIONS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

~~IEC 60601-1-2:2007 applies except as follows:~~

~~Addition:~~

~~12.1 Emissions classification~~

In addition to the requirements of ~~6.1.1.1~~ 7.1.1 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 2014, ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall be classified as Class B according to CISPR 11:2009.

NOTE Use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT includes use 'in domestic establishments'.

~~12.2 Protection of the PUBLIC MAINS NETWORK~~

~~NOTE—Mains powered ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are connected to the PUBLIC MAINS NETWORK. This means that for equipment for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT the PUBLIC MAINS NETWORK requirements of 6.1.3 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 apply.~~

~~12.3 * Additional technical description requirements applicable to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS~~

~~Subclauses 5.2.2.1 and 5.2.2.2 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 do not apply. Instead, the instructions for use shall include:~~

- ~~a) a statement to the effect that this equipment needs to be installed and put into service in accordance with the information provided in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS; and~~
- ~~b) a statement to the effect that wireless communications equipment such as wireless home network devices, mobile phones, cordless telephones and their base stations, walkie-talkies can affect this equipment and should be kept at least a distance, d , away from the equipment. The distance d is calculated by the MANUFACTURER from the 800 MHz to 2,5 GHz column of Table 5 or Table 6 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007, as appropriate.~~

~~EXAMPLE 1—As indicated in Table 6 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 for ME EQUIPMENT, a typical cell phone with a maximum output power of 2 W yields $d = 3,3$ m at an IMMUNITY LEVEL of 3 V/m.~~

~~EXAMPLE 2—As indicated in Table 6 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 for ME EQUIPMENT, a typical cell phone with a maximum output power of 2 W yields $d = 0,5$ m at an IMMUNITY LEVEL of 20 V/m.~~

~~Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.~~

~~12.4 * Additional requirements applicable to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS specified for use only in a shielded location~~

~~Subclause 5.2.2.3 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 does not apply.~~

~~12.5 * Additional requirements for ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) tests~~

~~For the purposes of the ESD testing in 6.2.2.2 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007, ACCESSIBLE PARTS are determined by points accessible by the standard test finger specified in Figure 6 of the general standard.~~

~~In 6.2.2.2 c) of IEC 60601-1-2:2007, delete the second sentence.~~

13 Additional requirements for ALARM SYSTEMS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

~~IEC 60601-1-8:2006 applies except as follows:~~

~~Addition:~~

13.1 * Additional requirement for generation of ALARM SIGNALS

In addition to the requirements of 6.3.1 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 for the ALARM SYSTEM of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, unless they are connected to a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM intended for confirmed delivery of ALARM CONDITIONS (6.11.2.2.1 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012) that includes the generation of auditory ALARM SIGNALS as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012, each HIGH PRIORITY and MEDIUM PRIORITY ALARM CONDITION shall cause the generation of auditory or verbal ALARM SIGNALS as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

13.2 * Additional requirement for ALARM SIGNAL volume

In addition to the requirements of ~~6.3.3.2~~ 6.3.3.3 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 for the ALARM SYSTEM of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT and intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT reducing the auditory ALARM SIGNAL volume below audible levels shall

- ~~• activate the indication of ALARM OFF or AUDIO OFF as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006.~~

- ~~• for LIFE SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM~~ not be possible unless the ALARM SYSTEM is connected to a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM intended for confirmed delivery of ALARM CONDITIONS (6.11.2.2.1 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012) that includes the generation of auditory ALARM SIGNALS as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006+IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012.

NOTE Guidance on suitable auditory ALARM SIGNAL volumes is found in the rationale for 6.3.3.2 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006.

Compliance is checked by functional testing.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 20 (RLV) 2015

Annex A (informative)

General guidance and rationale

A.1 General guidance

During the development of IEC 60601-1:2005, there was considerable discussion about the increasing use of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS outside professional healthcare facilities or without direct medical supervision.

Some of this equipment was seen as falling outside the formal scope of earlier editions of IEC 60601-1 and its collateral and particular standards because the definition of ME EQUIPMENT in IEC 60601-1:1988, included the phrase, "PATIENT under medical supervision".

A number of subsequent questions arose, including the following:

- Should the scope of the third edition of IEC 60601-1 be expanded to include ME EQUIPMENT intended for use without direct medical supervision?
- Should the new standard(s) include specific requirements for ME EQUIPMENT intended by its MANUFACTURER for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT?
- Should such requirements vary depending on the level of medical supervision or the environment in which the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be used?
- Does the introduction of RISK MANAGEMENT address these issues or is there still a need for additional technical requirements?

The question of what was originally meant by medical supervision remained unanswered but will still be relevant if the term is retained to differentiate proposed technical requirements for ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. Medical supervision could mean direct supervision by a doctor or it could include supervision by an allied health professional or a medical institution; it could be taken to mean real time supervision or it could include indirect supervision.

In reality, the level of medical supervision of ME EQUIPMENT used outside professional healthcare facilities and the environments in which it is used cover a wide range, as demonstrated by the following examples:

- HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT dialysis equipment is prescribed by a medical practitioner and is often installed and used under strict guidelines.
- Respiratory care equipment (bottles or oxygen concentrators, ventilators, nasal CPAP, etc.) is often prescribed by a medical practitioner but used without strict guidelines.
- Cardiac defibrillators of various kinds are used in all sorts of locations by doctors and nurses, ambulance paramedics, airline crews and even the general public.
- Many types of ME EQUIPMENT such as sphygmomanometers, clinical thermometers and transcutaneous nerve stimulators are purchased from pharmacy stores or over the internet without a medical prescription and used without any instructions or precautions other than those provided by the MANUFACTURER.

Developing tried-and-true answers to various issues associated with ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT should certainly reduce the need for individual MANUFACTURERS' RISK CONTROL measures and might improve the safety of SOME EQUIPMENT. However, the scope of the technical requirements needs to be carefully specified because the degree of medical supervision varies so widely. For example cardiac defibrillators may can be used by:

- hospital doctors: some might see this as full medical supervision while a doctor such as a dermatologist might say that medical supervision implies use by or under the direction of an appropriately qualified specialist;
- non-hospital doctors: the same dermatologist might be less qualified than an ambulance paramedic to use a defibrillator;
- hospital nurses: ready access to medical staff in some professional healthcare facilities;
- paramedics: somewhat slower access to direct medical supervision. Large diversity in training between various emergency services, i.e. wide range in quality of indirect medical supervision;
- airline crews: automatic external defibrillator – probably used under policies and PROCEDURES developed by the airline's medical adviser. Some might say this is medical supervision;
- general public: automatic external defibrillator – possibly used according to short-form instructions printed on the unit or the cabinet or verbal instructions from the device itself.

Likewise, test requirements need to differentiate between a range of use environments such as:

- the controlled environment in (some) healthcare facilities.
- the possibly less well controlled environment of a PATIENT'S home in which installation and use of ME EQUIPMENT is administered by a healthcare facility.
- the even less well controlled environment of a PATIENT'S home in which ME EQUIPMENT that has been prescribed by a medical practitioner is used without any direct supervision.
- the uncontrolled environment in which some ME EQUIPMENT purchased without a prescription is used.

One early step in addressing these issues was made when the scope of IEC 60601-1:2005 was extended by removing "under medical supervision" from the definition of ME EQUIPMENT. However there are only oblique references to the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT in IEC 60601-1:2005:

- One of the notes to the definition of RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION states that in "home use applications" the PATIENT, OPERATOR and RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION can be one and the same person.
- The rationale for the definition of OPERATOR states that in the "home-care environment" this could be either the PATIENT or a LAY OPERATOR assisting the PATIENT.
- The rationale for 14.13 of the general standard (~~Connection of a PEMS by network/DATA COUPLING to other equipment~~ PEMS intended to be incorporated into an IT-network) states that many hospitals operate ME EQUIPMENT in a networked environment within the hospital, between hospitals and from home.

This collateral standard was developed with these considerations in mind. It is intended to bridge the gap between the technical requirements in IEC 60601-1:2005 and those needed for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended by their MANUFACTURERS to be used in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

This second edition of IEC 60601-1-11 has been harmonized with IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012.

A.2 Rationale for particular clauses and subclauses

The following are rationales for specific clauses and subclauses in this collateral standard, with clause and subclause numbers parallel to those in the body of the document.

Subclause 1.1 – Scope

The definition of ME EQUIPMENT in IEC 60601-1:2005 contains very specific criteria that can be used to determine if a specific piece of equipment is MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT. That definition is repeated below.

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:

electrical equipment having an APPLIED PART or transferring energy to or from the PATIENT or detecting such energy transfer to or from the PATIENT and which is:

- a) provided with not more than one connection to a particular SUPPLY MAINS; and
- b) intended by its MANUFACTURER to be used:
 - 1) in the diagnosis, treatment, or monitoring of a PATIENT; or
 - 2) for compensation or alleviation of disease, injury or disability.

In order to determine if equipment is ME EQUIPMENT, one needs to demonstrate that:

- the ME EQUIPMENT has an APPLIED PART; or
- the ME EQUIPMENT transfers energy to or from the PATIENT; or
- the ME EQUIPMENT detects the energy transfer to or from the PATIENT.

If the equipment meets this criterion, then one needs to determine whether or not the MANUFACTURER of the equipment intends that:

- the ME EQUIPMENT be used for diagnosis, treatment, or monitoring of a PATIENT; or
- the ME EQUIPMENT be used for compensation or alleviation of disease, injury or disability.

Excluded from the scope are aids without an APPLIED PART, and where according to the INTENDED USE, the safety is fully covered by IEC 60950-1 [8], IEC 60065 [2] or IEC 60335-1 [3]. Examples of such equipment are the following:

- a reading aid with a digital camera and a monitor for enlargement of text for persons with impaired vision could be covered by ~~IEC 60950-1~~ or IEC 60065 and related EMC standards;
- a flashing light to indicate that the phone is ringing for persons with impaired hearing could be covered by IEC 60065 and related EMC standards;
- an amplifier for connection to radio or TV sets with wireless transmission to a BODY-WORN hearing aid could be covered by IEC 60065 and related EMC standards; and
- a can opener for persons with impaired hand/finger motion ability is better covered by IEC 60335-1 and related part-2 and EMC standards.

These types of products are in fact home electronics or household appliances rather than medical equipment, even though they might fall within the regulatory definition of a medical device in some countries. Hence, these products should comply with the relevant standard for such products e.g. IEC 60950-1 for the reading aid, IEC 60065 for the TV sound amplifier and IEC 60335-1 for the can opener. Persons handling such aids are not PATIENTS in the concept of IEC 60601-1 i.e. these persons are not more sensitive/vulnerable than people in general. The "PATIENT" operates these products, but they have in many cases no APPLIED PART.

There is no logical reason to require that a TV sound amplifier or a can opener for home use comply with IEC 60601-1 or with IEC 60601-1-2. Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) is not more critical for these products than for other generic products and there are no 'medical' APPLIED PARTS.

For the purposes of this standard, the EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES ENVIRONMENT is treated as a professional healthcare facility and is covered by IEC 60601-1-12. The goal of emergency medical services is to either provide treatment to those in need of urgent medical

care, with the goal of satisfactorily treating the malady, or arranging for timely removal of the PATIENT to the next point of definitive care. Emergency medical services are known by various names in different countries and regions.

~~Definition 3.1 – BODY-WORN~~

~~BODY-WORN is intended to describe ME EQUIPMENT that is wholly worn by the PATIENT. It is not intended to describe ME EQUIPMENT that is not worn by the PATIENT but has an APPLIED PART which might be worn, for example a MOBILE monitor with PATIENT leads or a non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE, but PORTABLE oxygen concentrator with a nasal cannula or mask are not considered to be BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT.~~

Definition 3.2 – LAY

This term was introduced as an adjective into this collateral standard to emphasize the difference between the characteristics of the OPERATOR and the RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION present in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT versus the environment of the professional healthcare facility. It was not introduced to remove or modify requirements from the general standard.

An important difference is the requirement for the USABILITY of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM, including its labeling, to address the intended OPERATOR who is presumed to not be a professional, medically trained individual or an expert in the operating principles and medical use of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM.

Additionally, the RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION, which can include the PATIENT or OPERATOR in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, most likely will not have the background to properly care for and maintain the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM in the same way a professional healthcare facility is expected to do by its regulators and accrediting bodies. The results of the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS for ME EQUIPMENT or an ME SYSTEM intended for the LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION can lead the MANUFACTURER to develop a product that is easier to maintain than when the only intended RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION is a professional healthcare facility and its personnel.

Subclause 4.1 – Additional requirements for SUPPLY MAINS for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

Most household appliance standards, such as IEC 60950-1 [8], IEC 60335-1 [3] and IEC 60065 [2] have a $\pm 10\%$ SUPPLY MAINS variation for household equipment. The -15% to $+10\%$ SUPPLY MAINS variation was considered more appropriate for ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT given the more critical need for maintaining ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The -15% low line SUPPLY MAINS variation is based on the -10% low line considered normal, and the additional -4% drop allowed for wiring in the electrical installations of buildings [1] [4] plus another 1% for margin.

The -20% SUPPLY MAINS variation for ~~LIFE-SUPPORTING~~ ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS **intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT** allows operation during 'brown-out' conditions and permits the use of inexpensive generators for emergency backup. This is consistent with requirements in existing standards for ventilators intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT for ventilator-dependent PATIENTS [11].

For DC SUPPLY MAINS, the requirements support operation from lead-acid batteries and automobiles. A typical 12 V lead-acid battery has an open circuit voltage of approximately 12,65 V when fully charged. This voltage drops to approximately 12,06 V when 25 % charged. Furthermore while cranking the engine, automotive lead-acid batteries are RATED for their ampacity while maintaining 7,2 V. MANUFACTURERS need to consider whether or not their equipment needs to operate under this condition. While the engine is running, the battery charging system typically maintains the DC voltage between 12,8 V and 14,8 V. [13] [14]

Subclause 4.2 – Environmental conditions for ME EQUIPMENT

Several test sequences of this standard combine elevated temperature and elevated relative humidity (unless indicated and marked otherwise). This combination is a severe condition that does not occur in actual use environments. For example MIL-HDBK-310 [26], subclause 5.1.3.1 shows a maximum world-wide absolute humidity corresponding to a dew point of 34°C. When air at the extreme 34 °C and 93 % relative humidity is warmed to 70 °C, the relative humidity will drop to a lower value of about 16 % because the vapour pressure at this temperature is 312 hPa [25]. This is why the committee has chosen to limit the water vapour partial pressure to 50 hPa. This needs to be considered when setting the control for relative humidity during the tests.

The partial pressure of a gas or vapour is the pressure that this gas would assume when no other gases were present in the given volume, i.e. all other gases being removed. So the partial pressure of oxygen in dry air at a pressure of 1 013 hPa is approximately equal to 210 hPa.

The saturation vapour pressure P_s of a liquid is the partial pressure of the vapour of that liquid in thermal equilibrium with its liquid. This saturation vapour pressure depends strongly on temperature. Saturation vapour pressure is low at low temperatures and reaches atmospheric pressure at the boiling temperature. A mathematical description of this temperature dependence was first developed by B. Clapeyron and later on derived by R. Clausius from the theory of thermodynamics.

$$P_s = K_1 \times e^{-K_2/T} \quad (\text{A.1})$$

where

T = the absolute temperature

K_1 and K_2 = are constants related boiling point and heat of evaporation

This can be reorganized as:

$$P_s = 1013 \text{ hPa} \times e^{\frac{K_2 \times (T_b - T)}{T_b \times T}} \quad (\text{A.2})$$

where

$K_2 = \Delta H / R$

ΔH = heat of evaporation

R = universal gas constant

T = the absolute temperature

T_b = the absolute boiling temperature

This equation is based on assumptions that only are valid over a limited temperature range. The most important assumption is that the heat of evaporation is temperature independent, which is not exactly the case. Therefore other formulas have been developed — either based on a more detailed theory taking into account what has been neglected before or on experimental data — that cover a larger temperature range. However, within the limited temperature range of 10 °C to 80 °C the original and simple Clausius-Clapeyron-equation can be used, albeit with slightly different constants.

Figure A.1 shows the saturation water vapour pressure as a function of temperature.

The relative humidity RH is given as the ratio of the actual partial pressure of the water vapour and the saturation vapour pressure.

$$RH = P_v / P_s \quad (A.3)$$

where

P_v = actual partial pressure of the water vapour

P_s = saturation vapour pressure

When one knows the actual temperature and thereby P_s , RH can be calculated from P_v and vice versa.

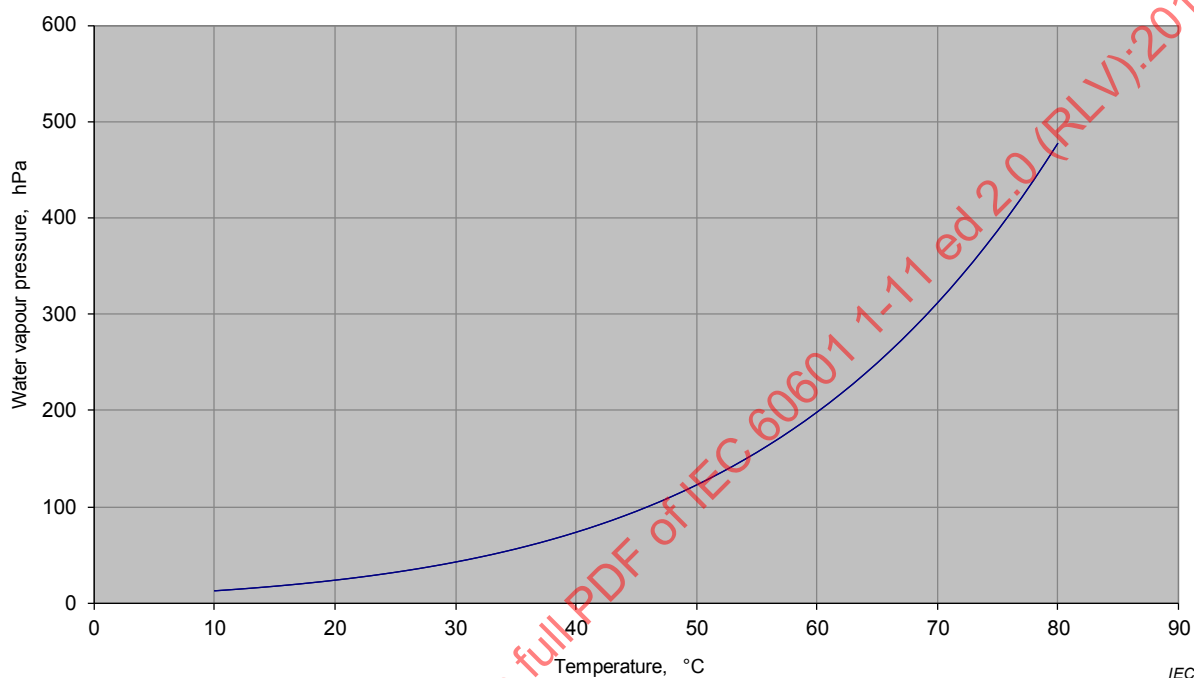


Figure A.1– Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature

Subclause 4.2.2 – Environmental conditions of transport and storage between uses

These environmental ranges defined in IEC TR 60721-4-7 [7] level 7K3 are not uncommon in storage locations where the ME EQUIPMENT might be stored or transported between uses in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. Outdoor temperatures and particularly temperatures found in automobiles during transport and storage can easily reach these extremes. To prevent damage to the ME EQUIPMENT, the ME EQUIPMENT either needs to be able to survive these conditions or the OPERATOR needs to be continually reminded by the required marking to protect the ME EQUIPMENT from these conditions. Consideration should be given to ranges greater than those required by this standard, such as either those covered by IEC TR 60721-4-7, for example level 7K4, or alternatively defined through evaluation of intended environments of use by the MANUFACTURER.

IEC TR 60721-4-7 was chosen since it is designed to provide specific test limits to match the intended environments of use expected by various use cases in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

Marking of the range of environmental transport and storage conditions between uses on the ME EQUIPMENT can be impossible because of the very small size of the ME EQUIPMENT, a part or ACCESSORY, or because such markings would interfere with the INTENDED USE of the ME EQUIPMENT, part or ACCESSORY.

To aid MANUFACTURERS of small ME EQUIPMENT in reducing test time, two options for the soak period are provided. The general requirement is to soak the ME EQUIPMENT at a set of

conditions for 24 h. The alternative is to permit the MANUFACTURER to measure the internal temperature of the ME EQUIPMENT at an appropriate location and then terminate the soak after THERMAL STABILITY has been reached for a period of 2 h.

Table A.1– Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature

Temperature °C	Saturation water vapour pressure P_s hPa	Equivalent relative humidity at an actual partial pressure of the water vapour of 50hPa %
10	12,28	-
12	14,03	-
14	15,99	-
16	18,19	-
18	20,64	-
20	23,39	-
22	26,45	-
24	29,85	-
26	33,63	-
28	37,82	-
30	42,46	-
32	47,58	-
34	53,23	94
36	59,45	84
38	66,30	75
40	73,81	68
42	82,05	61
44	91,08	55
46	100,94	50
48	111,71	45
50	123,44	41
52	136,23	37
54	150,12	33
56	165,22	30
58	181,59	28
60	199,32	25
62	218,51	23
64	239,25	21
66	261,63	19
68	285,76	17
70	311,76	16
72	339,72	15
74	369,78	14
76	402,05	12
78	436,65	11
80	473,73	11

Subclause 4.2.3 – Environmental operating conditions

These environmental ranges are commonly found in areas where ME EQUIPMENT is operated in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

This subclause specifies a set of environmental operating conditions (temperature, relative humidity, atmospheric pressure) under which ME EQUIPMENT is required to maintain its BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. These conditions are wider than those that had been required because the environmental conditions in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are typically wider or less controlled than those of a professional healthcare facility. To maintain its BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE, the ME EQUIPMENT either needs to be able to function under the conditions specified in this subclause or the OPERATOR needs to be continually reminded to operate the ME EQUIPMENT within the more restricted range of conditions marked on the ME EQUIPMENT during use.

In order to evaluate the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of the ME EQUIPMENT, PATIENT simulation might be needed to approximate a worst-case PATIENT use scenario so that the test can be performed without connecting the ME EQUIPMENT to a PATIENT. The MANUFACTURER will need to determine which functionality of the ME EQUIPMENT can appropriately be used for evaluation of its BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. Some ME EQUIPMENT needs to be sequentially activated and can require some modification in order to complete these tests. MANUFACTURERS are reminded that subclause 5.4 a) of the general standard requires testing to be performed "under the least favorable working conditions ... that are identified during the RISK ANALYSIS". This means that these tests also need to be performed at any intermediate point that is suspected or known to be less favorable than those explicitly specified in this subclause.

Marking of the range of environmental operating conditions of use on the ME EQUIPMENT can be impossible because of the very small size of the ME EQUIPMENT, a part or ACCESSORY, or because such markings would interfere with the INTENDED USE of the ME EQUIPMENT, part or ACCESSORY.

To aid MANUFACTURERS of small ME EQUIPMENT in reducing test time, two options for the soak period are provided. The general requirement is to soak the ME EQUIPMENT at a set of conditions for 24 h. The alternative is to permit the MANUFACTURER to measure the internal temperature of the ME EQUIPMENT at an appropriate location and then terminate the soak after THERMAL STABILITY has been reached for a period of 2 h.

Subclause 4.2.3.2 – Environmental shock to TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT is likely to see rapid changes in environmental temperature and humidity while operating – for example, when the PATIENT moves from the cold, dry conditions found outdoors in the winter into the relatively warm, moist conditions inside a home or other heated structure. The TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT has to continue to provide BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE during that transition even if there is condensation on or in the ME EQUIPMENT. TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT is also likely to see movement from relatively warm and moist conditions into cooler, dryer conditions.

Moving from cold and dry conditions to warmer and moister conditions, might result in some safety and performance difficulties due to wetness caused by condensation. Some safety and performance difficulties can include problems with moving parts and failure of electronics due to shorting of functional insulation. Requirements for CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES in the general standard are based on a pollution degree 2 environment. The typical HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is expected to be a pollution degree 2 environment, i.e. an environment with dust, which when dry is non-conductive, but can be moist, and when moist is considered conductive. The CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES for such pollution degree 2 environments are established taking into account temporary condensation periods. Subclause 8.9 of the general standard establishes suitable CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES for MEANS OF OPERATOR PROTECTION (MOOP), and more conservative distances

for MEANS OF PATIENT PROTECTION (MOPP). Similarly concerns about integrity of solid insulation are considered minimal because of the required humidity conditioning testing required by the general standard.

Moving from warm and moist conditions to cooler, dryer conditions might result in some safety and performance difficulties (e.g. degradation or loss) due to contraction and increased brittleness of materials. Some safety and performance difficulties can include sticking valves, belts slipping or o-rings leaking. Solid insulation between conductive parts has more severe 30-day thermal cycling testing in 8.9.3 of the general standard, making concerns in this area minimal.

The committee considers that TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is designed to operate within the standard operating environmental conditions given in 4.2.3 is unlikely to have difficulty with environmental shock due to rapid temperature and humidity changes within that range. If the ME EQUIPMENT design incorporates non-standard technologies or materials, the MANUFACTURER can decide that additional testing is prudent, but it is not required by this standard.

For TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is RATED for more extreme environmental conditions than those specified in 4.2.3, this standard requires environmental shock testing.

When environmental shock testing is conducted, the MANUFACTURER needs to consider compliance criteria for BASIC SAFETY that include such issues, inter alia:

- as degradation or loss of seals (which could be a RISK CONTROL measure for O₂ separation, or providing ingress protection),
- degradation or loss of protective covers (which could be a RISK CONTROL measure for casualty HAZARDS, or providing fire containment).

The concerns about condensation degrading or shorting CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES are minimal because the distances specified in the general standard are appropriate for their intended pollution degree. Similarly concerns about safety and the integrity of solid insulation are considered minimal because of required humidity testing and, where appropriate, 30-day thermal cycling testing required in the general standard. The committee considers the requirements in the general standard to be suitable RISK CONTROL measures to deal with environment shock and conducting LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing are considered unnecessary after these tests.

The ME EQUIPMENT is required to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE during and following these tests.

For some ME EQUIPMENT, moving between atmospheric pressure extremes might need to be considered. This subclause does not require a test or provide a protocol for this possibility. Such ME EQUIPMENT where concerns about environmental atmospheric pressure shock might need investigating includes air handling systems, such as ventilators and associated ACCESSORIES. However, most ME EQUIPMENT is unlikely to be affected by rapid pressure changes.

Clause 5 – General requirements for testing ME EQUIPMENT

For purposes of electrical safety, the identification of ACCESSIBLE PARTS using the small test probe defined in Figure 13 of IEC 61032:1997 [9] is appropriate for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT because this equipment is likely to be around small children who are unsupervised. However, for purposes of ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) tests, the standard test finger described in Figure 6 of the general standard is deemed adequate. ~~See 12.5.~~

Clause 6 – Classification of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

Many countries have a standard or code covering electrical installations in buildings that is derived from the IEC or CENELEC standards and is incorporated into building regulations, health and safety regulations or is otherwise legally enforceable. The problem is that these standards are not ~~retroactive~~ **retrospective**, so many existing buildings and their occupants do not benefit from this level of safety. As a result, the safety means, and in particular the PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION, in older buildings is questionable.

While the standards of safety in most areas of life are constantly improving, the safety of domestic electrical installations in existing buildings has not kept pace. People expect to be at their safest when in their own homes and tend not to be aware of the RISKS that face them there.

For example, the current completion rate for newly built dwellings implies that the average lifetime of a European dwelling is 200 years and the majority (60%) of European housing stock is already over 30 years old [16]. A significant majority of domestic electrical installations in Europe do not meet current electrical codes. The high average age of homes coupled with an intense electricity-based lifestyle and increasing safety standards are factors that require a regular, periodic renovation of electrical installations. Presently, this is not the case. The renovation rate for electrical installations in Europe is low. The above figures are based on the European situation. The experts from the joint working group that prepared this standard were of the opinion that the average situation with regard to the safety of the electrical installation in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is not significantly better in other parts of the world, and might be even worse. In some countries, for example Japan and Denmark, a connection for protective earth in homes is not usually available.

The lack of adequate safety measures can have serious consequences. Electrical defects are a common cause of fire. Research has shown that fires caused by electrical defects result in more damage and personal injuries than average fires. Poorly maintained electrical equipment can also cause injuries through electric shock, especially if the safety means of the protective earth is not present or not functioning. These electrical defects can also cause ME EQUIPMENT to malfunction with serious consequences for the people involved and specifically for the PATIENT who might not be able to respond to these defects, e.g. by reflex, which is a major difference compared to other electrical equipment used by healthy persons in the household.

The committee concluded that it is unacceptable to base the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT on a PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION considering the facts that:

- it can be reasonably foreseen that ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT will quite often be used with electrical installations that lack effective PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTIONS;
- the typical LAY OPERATOR will not be able to determine the status/safety of the electrical installation; and
- much of the ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT will be installed and used without professional support (i.e. the support of a professional home care provider).

Consequently the RISK CONTROL measures for protection against electrical shock for ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE environment should not depend on a

PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION (i.e. be of CLASS I construction). Similarly, the designer of the ME EQUIPMENT should not depend on the presence of a FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION to earth in order to comply with EMC requirements or to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

An exception is made for ME EQUIPMENT that is PERMANENTLY INSTALLED since such equipment is required to be electrically connected to the SUPPLY MAINS by means of a permanent connection that can only be detached by the use of a TOOL. When that connection is made, which is normally performed by SERVICE PERSONNEL (e.g. a skilled electrical contractor), the adequacy of the PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION can be verified. There are specific disclosure requirements included in 7.5.1 to ensure specifically that the appropriate information is available for this important connection.

The committee concluded that excluding TYPE B APPLIED PARTS and allowing only F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS provided practical RISK CONTROL for the following reasonably foreseeable HAZARDOUS SITUATIONS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT:

- a) It was felt that ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT would likely have NETWORK/DATA COUPLING ports for ACCESSORIES, including connections to the internet, a telecommunication network, a printer, etc. While the instructions for use will specify that only appropriate safety compliant equipment is to be connected to such ports, it is reasonably foreseeable that some ACCESSORIES will not have appropriate TOUCH CURRENT limits. An F-TYPE APPLIED PART insulation barrier separates the APPLIED PART from the equipment chassis by insulation equivalent to a data separation barrier on user SIP/SOP ACCESSORY ports.
- b) The total PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT from APPLIED PARTS contacting an earthed PATIENT will increase as the number of APPLIED PARTS increases. In a professional healthcare facility this is supervised by healthcare professionals. In the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT this level of supervision is likely missing. An F-TYPE APPLIED PART insulation barrier separates the APPLIED PART from earth, and therefore the total PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT from multiple F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS to earth is greatly reduced by design.

The exclusion of TYPE B APPLIED PARTS is felt to be the best practical mitigation strategy for the above HAZARDOUS SITUATIONS. The committee acknowledges that depending on the specific ME EQUIPMENT type, some or all of the RISKS associated with these HAZARDOUS SITUATIONS could be controlled by alternative means. For example, some ME EQUIPMENT does not have NETWORK/DATA COUPLING ports, or if they do, have a suitable data separation barrier. Some ME EQUIPMENT is unlikely to be used while simultaneously contacting other APPLIED PARTS, such as a heating blanket. INTERNALLY POWERED products will have negligible PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT.

The exception for ME EQUIPMENT that is PERMANENTLY INSTALLED applies since such equipment is required to be reliably electrically connected to the SUPPLY MAINS by means of a permanent connection that can only be detached by the use of a TOOL. Such ME EQUIPMENT is allowed to have a TYPE B APPLIED PART. For some ME EQUIPMENT with a TYPE B APPLIED PART, the protective earth provides a single means of protection, e.g. haemodialysis equipment. Haemodialysis equipment also represents a class of ME EQUIPMENT where providing an F-TYPE APPLIED PART can be impractical. As such equipment is installed by SERVICE PERSONNEL, one can assume that it has a reliable protective earth. As a result, a TYPE B APPLIED PART is acceptable for PERMANENTLY INSTALLED ME EQUIPMENT.

The MANUFACTURER of PERMANENTLY INSTALLED ME EQUIPMENT should still consider the HAZARDS noted for cord-connected ME EQUIPMENT, which the committee feels are best mitigated by allowing only F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS.

Subclause 7.1 – USABILITY of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

As required by the general standard and its USABILITY collateral standard, IEC 60601-1-6:2010 and IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013, ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT should focus on the characteristics of the intended LAY OPERATOR to make the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS most effective for them. A major shortcoming of many

ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS is that they have not been written with the target LAY OPERATORS in mind. Consequently, LAY OPERATORS have often misunderstood or been unable to comprehend the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.

Because of the wide variation expected in the education and competency of LAY OPERATORS, the committee considers a reading comprehension comparable to the eighth year of education to be reasonable. This is consistent with guidance from the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) [22] [23] [24]. These references are suggested as useful guidance documents for developing high quality ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS for LAY OPERATORS of ME EQUIPMENT for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

User research and the ongoing USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS involve the systematic collection of data from members of the intended user group on various characteristics of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS. User research of ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS should focus on one or more of the following areas: LAY OPERATOR comprehension, LAY OPERATOR performance, acceptability, and credibility. User research can identify specific strengths and weaknesses of ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS. The findings from user research can improve ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS before the ME EQUIPMENT is brought to market. User research methods include focus group interviews, in-depth individual interviews, questionnaires, and readability testing. The use of clear, simple, precise graphics can help any user understand instructions.

Software TOOLS available to estimate the grade level readability of text include:

- Flesch-Kincaid Grade Level – part of standard Microsoft Word word processing program;
- SMOG (Simple Measure of Gobbledygook) Readability Index – commonly used by the U.S. government to measure readability;
- Fry Readability Graph.

These TOOLS measure readability based upon words per sentence and syllables per word.

Most often, some combination of these methods is used to develop a USABILITY SPECIFICATION for the most effective ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS possible. The MANUFACTURER VERIFIES that the final ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS fulfill the USABILITY SPECIFICATION. VALIDATION includes testing with representative LAY OPERATORS.

The committee reminds designers of ME EQUIPMENT for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT that ideally a RISK CONTROL measure will be intrinsic to the design, and not rely on the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENT, which particularly in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, can be misunderstood and is likely to be lost.

Subclause 7.2 – Additional requirements for marking of IP classification

Subclause 8.3.1 requires a minimum IP classification for ME EQUIPMENT. IEC 60529 offers the MANUFACTURER a common marking for conveying to an OPERATOR the IP classification. Parties other than LAY persons (such as homecare providers, clinicians or knowledgeable LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATIONS) can be involved in selecting equipment for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. Conveying IP classification is necessary for these parties and permits choosing the appropriate equipment for a specific application. Such marking is also consistent with the requirements for ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the professional healthcare facility.

Subclause 7.4.2 – Additional requirements for an electrical power source

The intent of this subclause is to give the OPERATOR a reasonable expectation of how long the ME EQUIPMENT will operate. This permits the OPERATOR to know how many extra batteries to have available or how long the ME EQUIPMENT will last before it needs replacing.

ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT that utilizes an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, that is not periodically or automatically maintained, can usually be

powered with batteries that are readily available to the general public. For example, a sphygmomanometer designed for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT can be powered by a primary type battery using a Zinc-Carbon or an Alkaline type cell, or by a secondary (rechargeable) type of battery using a Nickel-Metal Hydride type cell. The characteristics for these batteries differ significantly from cell type to cell type as well as within one cell type from one battery MANUFACTURER to another. The capacities (i.e. operation time or number of PROCEDURES), SHELF LIFE (for primary types) and for rechargeable types, how many times the battery can be charged and discharged before it becomes unusable (good cycle life) are significantly different from one cell type to another.

Because many INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES use electrochemical battery technologies, these disclosures are likely to be based on a combination of measurements, specifications and calculations, all of which are based on a set of typical operating conditions for the specified cell type. The MANUFACTURER should consider the technical characteristics of a particular battery type in reference to the NORMAL USE of the ME EQUIPMENT, as well as usage pattern information, temperature during use, electrical load conditions, etc., in developing the disclosure required in this subclause.

As there are several possibilities for INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES, the required disclosures in the instructions for use should be determined under one of the following conditions:

- for a non-rechargeable ~~(primary)~~ INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE,
 - a) for a non-replaceable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the operation time or number of PROCEDURES and the typical service life is determined using a new and unused INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE; or
 - b) for a replaceable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the operation time or number of PROCEDURES is determined using an unused INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, as specified in the instructions for use, that is within the SHELF LIFE of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE; or
- NOTE Consideration should also be given to whether or not a separate disclosure is needed for conditions where the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is at the end of its SHELF LIFE.
- for a rechargeable ~~(secondary)~~ INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the operation time or number of PROCEDURES of the specified rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE when installed in the ME EQUIPMENT is determined for both:
 - c) a new and fully charged INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, and
 - d) a fully charged INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE at the specified point of replacement of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE or ME EQUIPMENT.

Subclause 7.4.7 – Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection and sterilization

The disclosure is required to reduce the RISK of infection to acceptable levels. See rationale to 8.1.

Subclause 8.1 – Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS, and

Subclause 8.2 – Additional requirements for sterilization of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES should not be operated or used if their condition could compromise the health or safety of the PATIENT using them or the employees or third parties supplying them. Among other reasons, this means that ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES cannot be operated or used if there is a potential RISK of the PATIENT becoming infected from the ME EQUIPMENT, a ME SYSTEM or an ACCESSORY.

ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES used in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT require an appropriate level of disinfection, depending on their use, but rarely need to be sterile. Methods used for the cleaning and disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and

ACCESSORIES need to reduce/eliminate the RISK of infecting a PATIENT with microorganisms while also reducing the RISK to the OPERATOR who performs the cleaning and disinfection PROCESS. The methods also need to be feasible for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT in which they are intended to be performed.

All ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES are a potential source of infection in humans. Any ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY that has been used by a PATIENT is potentially contaminated with reproductive human pathogenic microorganisms until proven otherwise. Appropriate PROCEDURES for handling and PROCESSING are essential to protect the next person handling, or the next PATIENT using, the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORY. Hence ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES that have been used need PROCESSING, following the MANUFACTURER'S instructions, prior to reuse by another PATIENT.

The basic requirements for such PROCESSING of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES are usually determined by:

- the potential degree of contamination of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORY; and
- the RISK of infecting another PATIENT or third party or re-infecting a PATIENT resulting from reuse of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY and the type of application of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY.

Reusable ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES that are used in professional healthcare facilities are routinely intended for sequential use with multiple PATIENTS, i.e. moved from one sick PATIENT to another sick PATIENT. This practice creates opportunities for cross contamination by potentially virulent microorganisms. In order to prevent infection caused by cross contamination, professional healthcare facilities vigorously clean and sterilize reusable ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES using expensive, elaborate equipment and/or toxic chemicals.

The situation is quite different for ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT:

- Reusable ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES for chronic care are not routinely moved from PATIENT to PATIENT so the RISK of cross contamination is low.
- PATIENTS using ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS are not always sick and usually not infected with virulent microorganisms.
- It is generally not feasible to purchase and operate elaborate sterilization systems and it is not safe to use toxic chemicals in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are often used repeatedly on the same PATIENT. ACCESSORIES and components that would typically be either subject to cleaning and high-level disinfection or cleaning and sterilization in the professional healthcare facility should be cleaned and disinfected in a manner that reduces the RISK of infection from common, household- and PATIENT-resident microorganisms.

When selecting and evaluating the cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization methods the MANUFACTURER has to consider:

- the amount and type of microorganisms expected to be on the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY used;
- the RISK for the microorganisms to be transmitted; and
- the resistance of the microorganisms to the cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization methods intended to be used.

The RISKS posed by such PROCESSING of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES are determined by the following factors:

- a) undesired effects, which can result from:

- the previous use of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY,
 - the previous cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization PROCEDURES, and
 - transportation and storage;
- b) the RISKS from the type of subsequent uses, such as:
- residues from the previous use (such as secretions and other bodily components or drugs);
 - residues from the previous cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization PROCEDURES (such as cleaning agents, disinfectants and other substances, including their reaction products);
 - changes of physical, chemical or functional properties of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY; and
 - changes in the condition of the material (such as accelerated wear and tear, embrittlement and changed surface conditions, connectors and adhesive joints);
- c) the RISK of transmission of any microorganisms.

When considering the suitability and feasibility of the cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization PROCEDURE for ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY within the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, the MANUFACTURER should consider the following:

- the RISKS involved in the PROCESS;
- the cost effectiveness of the PROCESS;
- the practicability of the PROCESS;
- the availability of the cleaning equipment and the cleaning agents specified in the PROCESS;
- the efficiency of the PROCESS;
- the reproducibility of the PROCESS;
- the quality management requirements of the PROCESS; and
- the environmental impact of the PROCESS and the disposal of any supplies (e.g. cleaning agents) utilized.

When in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT or an ME SYSTEM is intended to be used on a different PATIENT, it is appropriate to use methods of cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization that are used in the professional healthcare facility. This might include the need for specific TOOLS or equipment and specific knowledge or training of the persons involved in these PROCEDURES which are usually not available in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, i.e. this might include the need to involve professional organizations (e.g. hospitals, homecare providers or MANUFACTURERS) in that PROCESS.

Subclause 8.3.1 – Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT

ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT can face many situations which ME EQUIPMENT intended for use only in the professional healthcare facilities is not likely to encounter due to environmental controls and OPERATOR training in professional healthcare facilities.

Therefore, as a minimum requirement, ENCLOSURES of ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are required to provide protection against ingress of an object of Ø 12,5 mm (an adult's finger). This is in addition to the requirement in Clause 5 for determining ACCESSIBLE PARTS utilizing Ø 5,6 mm (equivalent to a child's finger). All HAND-HELD and BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT are required to be protected against the ingress of vertically falling water drops with the ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE tilted at 15° (IPX2). MOBILE and PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT in non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use are to be protected against the ingress of vertically falling water drops with the ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE positioned on a turntable (IPX1). These requirements are summarized in Table A.2.

Table A.1 – Summary by use of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE ingress of water and particulate matter requirements

	Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use				TRANSIT-OPERABLE use			
	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN
IEC 60529 Ingress protection	IP21	IP21	IP22	IP22	IP22	IP22	IP22	IP22

TRANSIT-OPERABLE includes use outdoors, and has a potentially higher probability of exposure to dust, dirt and rain, even for MOBILE and PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT. This is especially true for those mounted on wheelchairs and those that are ~~LIFE-SUPPORTING~~ ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS **intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT**. It is difficult to predict when a PATIENT might use ME EQUIPMENT outdoors, but it is reasonably foreseeable that such use will occur. It is also reasonably foreseeable that PATIENTS will not be able to keep their ME EQUIPMENT dry. Under these conditions, ME EQUIPMENT is expected to maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

When a carrying case is used during IP testing, it should be the same case that is used during mechanical strength testing.

Subclause 8.3.2 – Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME SYSTEMS

As with the analysis in the rationale to Clause 6, the committee concluded that most ME SYSTEMS comprise ME EQUIPMENT in combination with ACCESSORIES such as connections to the internet, a telecommunication network, a printer, etc. Consistent with the philosophy of the general standard, this standard relies on the requirements for resistance to ingress of water or particulate matter of other IEC product safety standards (e.g. IEC 60335-1 and IEC 60950-1) for non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS. Information technology communication (ITC) equipment, such as computers, cable boxes and modems should not have new or additional requirements just because they have a FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION to ME EQUIPMENT.

The MANUFACTURER should identify what ingress protection is appropriate for non-medical equipment and non-medical ACCESSORIES used in an ME SYSTEM. It is not expected that non-medical equipment or ACCESSORIES necessarily require the same ingress protection as the ME EQUIPMENT. The relative proximity of non-medical equipment and ACCESSORIES to the ME EQUIPMENT and PATIENT can demand a lesser or greater ingress requirement. While the non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of the ME SYSTEM can share a conductive connection (electrical or fluid) with the ME EQUIPMENT, the non-medical equipment and ACCESSORIES do not share a conductive connection to the PATIENT. In accordance with Clause 6, all cord-connected ME EQUIPMENT for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are required to have F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS.

Subclause 8.5.1 – Indication of state

Providing a means to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE allows the OPERATOR to plan for replacement so that continuous operation remains possible. It can also be important for the OPERATOR to be aware of the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE while the ME EQUIPMENT is powered from SUPPLY MAINS.

Many simple measuring devices, e.g. a thermometer, do not have display space to indicate this continuously, and are used aperiodically. An OPERATOR needs to look at the display to know the state; it is little different to press a button to see this indication. As a result, permitting OPERATOR action to indicate the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is acceptable. Continuous display when the thermometer is in the medicine cabinet is of no value.

Many ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS not intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT do not need a TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION that indicates a loss of battery power, since the lack of any displayed output can be an adequate indication of no operation. However, inaccurate output data frequently could be considered as a loss of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE and would generally require a TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION. See 8.4 for additional requirements when the safety of the PATIENT is dependent on continual operation.

It should be understood that both 12.1 and 12.2 of the general standard can also apply to the MANUFACTURER'S implementation of the means of indicating the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, i.e. the MANUFACTURER needs to determine how accurate this indication needs to be and that the intended OPERATOR can understand the indication.

Subclause 10.1 – Additional requirements for mechanical strength

NORMAL USE in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT includes rough handling beyond that anticipated in a professional healthcare facility. Test methods considered representative have been specified based on usage categories having to do with whether the ME EQUIPMENT is STATIONARY while being used, or if it is sometimes moving during NORMAL USE.

ME EQUIPMENT in NORMAL USE is subjected to mechanical stresses (e.g. vibration, shock) and could randomly be subjected to additional stresses. Therefore ME EQUIPMENT needs to be robust enough to withstand the vibration, shock, bumps and drops that it will encounter in NORMAL USE. These tests were chosen by first qualitatively assessing the relative severity of the scenarios within various environments (i.e. home, and private transport) on various sizes and types (i.e. HAND-HELD, PORTABLE, MOBILE, BODY-WORN and TRANSIT-OPERABLE) of ME EQUIPMENT. The results of this analysis for the various types of shock and vibration expected to be experienced are shown in Table A.2.

Table A.2 – Qualitative assessment of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT subjected to shock and vibration

	Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use				TRANSIT-OPERABLE use ^a			
	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN
Vibration	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	1
Shock	1	1	1	1	2	2	3	2
Drop	1	1	3	2	2	2	3	3
Mechanical strength 0=no test, 1=least severe or 7M1 ^b , 2=moderately severe or 7M2, 3=most severe or 7M3								
^a TRANSIT-OPERABLE use includes use outdoors, use in automobiles and use in or attached to wheelchairs.								
^b The 7Mx designations are described in IEC 60721-3-7:1995 [5] and IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].								

Consistent with the philosophy of the general standard, this standard relies on the mechanical strength requirements of other IEC product safety standards (e.g. IEC 60335-1 [3] and IEC 60950-1 [8]) for non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS. ITC equipment, such as computers, cable boxes and modems should not have new or additional requirements just because they have a FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION to ME EQUIPMENT.

BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is considered TRANSIT-OPERABLE, given a PATIENT'S normal daily routine, including walking or otherwise moving around, sometimes outside of the home. Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is only considered likely for bed-ridden PATIENTS. The severity analysis for TRANSIT-OPERABLE BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is formulated taking into account the body's shock absorbing properties. Whether ME EQUIPMENT is intended for TRANSIT-OPERABLE or non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use is based on how the MANUFACTURER describes the INTENDED USE in the instructions for use.

EXAMPLE 1 A PORTABLE enteral feeding pump can be intended for use on a seated PATIENT (non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE) or for use on a walking PATIENT (TRANSIT-OPERABLE).

EXAMPLE 2 A PORTABLE ventilator can be intended for use on a seated PATIENT (non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE) or for use mounted on a wheelchair (TRANSIT-OPERABLE).

Subclause 10.1.2 – Requirements for mechanical strength for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

After qualitative assessment, the committee assessed the International Standards in the IEC 60068 series relevant to environmental testing, and their respective rationales, as well as the IEC 60721 series of guidance documents. In selecting the requirements, the committee reviewed other sources for material related to these tests (e.g. MIL-STD-810F [15], etc.) but found the best fit was with IEC 60721-3-7:1995 [5]. This International Standard mapped well to the requirements defined in Table A.3. There is also a guidance document, IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7] that helps to correlate environmental condition classes of IEC 60721-3 to environmental tests according the IEC 60068 series.

The aforementioned International Standards specify 3 classes of mechanical conditions: 7M1, 7M2 and 7M3. The committee found the range of classes 7M1, 7M2 and 7M3 to represent the range of conditions seen during use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and TRANSIT-OPERABLE use. The committee agreed that different tests and test levels should be applied to ME EQUIPMENT intended for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use versus equipment intended for TRANSIT-OPERABLE use based on its portability, as indicated in this standard.

In most cases, non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT used in both the professional healthcare facility and the HOME CARE ENVIRONMENT are severity level 7M1. Although this would imply that no additional testing other than that in the general standard should be needed, the committee felt some additional mechanical strength testing was necessary due to operation by LAY OPERATORS and the presence of children in the HOME CARE ENVIRONMENT.

For non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE HAND-HELD ME EQUIPMENT, free fall 7M3 is less severe than the 1 m drop already specified in the general standard. The committee retained the drop test in the general standard. Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is considered as though it were always HAND-HELD and not PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT. The committee considered it likely that such ME EQUIPMENT is likely to be dropped while being handled.

As required in the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT is required to be equipped with its intended ACCESSORIES, as indicated in the instructions for use, during mechanical strength testing. ME EQUIPMENT such as beds, PATIENT transport and wheelchairs, are loaded with the intended PATIENT load, as indicated in the instructions for use, during free fall, shock, and vibration testing.

Determining that rough handling (vibration, shock, and drop) testing has not resulted in an unacceptable RISK, includes determining that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE have been maintained. Engineering judgment can be used to formulate a practical test methodology for verifying acceptable RISK during and after rough handling. For ME EQUIPMENT, such as ME EQUIPMENT with mechanical moving parts, (i.e. ventilators, overflow switch), it can be necessary to have the ME EQUIPMENT operate as intended and maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while undergoing the tests. For other ME EQUIPMENT, it is only necessary to verify BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE after the rough handling tests.

Temporary interruptions of intended operation can be tolerated if consistent with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. For example, with a breast pump, an overflow cut-off switch could be easily reset by the OPERATOR after a mechanical disturbance, and this temporary interruption of intended operation was not likely to be considered an unacceptable RISK.

Subclause 10.1.3 – Requirements for mechanical strength for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

ME EQUIPMENT which in NORMAL USE is intended to be used while the PATIENT is moving (i.e. walking, riding in a automobile) will be subjected to these mechanical stresses (e.g. vibration, shock, and drop) and could randomly be subjected to additional stresses. Therefore, ME EQUIPMENT intended to be used while the PATIENT is moving needs to be robust enough to withstand the mechanical strength testing described by IEC 60721-3-7:1995 [6] level 7M3. IEC 60721-3-7:1995 indicates that in addition to the conditions covered by class 7M2, the class 7M3 applies to use at, and direct transfer between, locations with significant vibrations, or with high-level shocks. Rough handling and transfer of ME EQUIPMENT is expected in these environments such as use in automobiles and on wheelchairs. Free fall 7M3 is less severe than the 1 m drop already specified in the general standard. The committee retained the drop test in the general standard.

There are no established generalized test programs that exactly reproduce the range of vibration and shock conditions that ME EQUIPMENT can be subjected to when installed in a range of land vehicles and aircraft. Therefore the dynamic tests specified in this subclause have been chosen on the basis that ME EQUIPMENT tested to these levels is likely to withstand the normal dynamic disturbances that it can be subjected to when used in the range of environments, vehicles and aircraft that PATIENTS are likely to be in during normal everyday activities.

It is essential that thorough analysis is used to assess the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of the ME EQUIPMENT use during its transportation from one location to another. ME EQUIPMENT today is expected to enable persons to experience a better quality of life and not to limit their daily living by having to provide special care and treatment to ME EQUIPMENT in order to get these benefits. So evaluation of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE should be considered as appropriate for certain ME EQUIPMENT during the performance of these tests.

MANUFACTURERS of TRANSIT-OPERABLE non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS should consider whether or not additional mechanical strength testing of the non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS is necessary to ensure BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

For free-fall testing described in IEC 60068-2-31:2008, the committee used the rationale for the various levels to gauge the severity of the test based on Table A.3. The severity of the drop (the drop height) was based on the mass of the ME EQUIPMENT. The committee agreed that some ME EQUIPMENT is likely to be supplied with a protective or carrying case for PORTABLE use. When a carrying case is used during mechanical strength testing, it should be the same case that is used during testing of the protection against ingress of water or particulate matter.

Where the Test 1 or Test 2 test method is specified in this subclause, the intent is that the MANUFACTURER is permitted to select the test method that is more practical or otherwise advantageous to them. The test methods are considered equivalent methods to verify the effectiveness of RISK CONTROL measure(s) for rough handling.

~~Subclause 10.2 – Additional requirements for an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE~~

~~Providing a means to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE allows the OPERATOR to plan for replacement so that continuous operation remains possible. It can also be important for the OPERATOR to be aware of the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE while the ME EQUIPMENT is powered from SUPPLY MAINS.~~

~~Many simple measuring devices, e.g. a thermometer, do not have display space to indicate this continuously, and are used aperiodically. An OPERATOR needs to look at the display to know the state; it is little different to press a button to see this indication. As a result, permitting OPERATOR action to indicate the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is~~

~~acceptable. Continuous display when the thermometer is in the medicine cabinet is of no value.~~

~~Many non-LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS do not need a TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION that indicates a loss of battery power, since the lack of any displayed output can be an adequate indication of no operation. However, inaccurate output data frequently could be considered as a loss of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE and would generally require a TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION. See 8.4 for additional requirements when the safety of the PATIENT is dependent on continual operation.~~

~~It should be understood that both 12.1 and 12.2 of the general standard can also apply to the MANUFACTURER'S implementation of the means of indicating the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, i.e. the MANUFACTURER needs to determine how accurate this indication needs to be and that the intended OPERATOR can understand the indication.~~

Subclause 11 – Protection against strangulation or asphyxiation

When assessing the potential for strangulation or asphyxiation, the following should be considered:

- The actual occurrence of strangulation or asphyxiation by ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is not known. As in other areas of medical misadventure, there could be underreporting of these types of events.
- The RISK associated with cords placed close to children is well described in the literature [20] [17] [5]. The force necessary to strangle a child is relatively small; therefore, children are particularly vulnerable to this HAZARD.

NOTE The number of fatalities caused by entanglement was significantly higher in the group of children older than 7 months in the study by Drago and Danenberg [17].

- The RISK from cords, cables or tubes is related to the PATIENT'S cognitive level, age, mobility, coordination and strength. Because of these factors, such PATIENTS are less able to untangle themselves if caught up in or hanging from cords, cables or tubes.
- The overall number of tubings and lines (e.g. oxygen tubing, pulse oximetry, electrocardiographic leads, intravenous tubing) and the length of the ME EQUIPMENT umbilical can further increase the RISK of strangulation.
- A MOBILE PATIENT increases the RISK of pulling and tightening cords, cables or tubes around the PATIENT'S neck or limbs.

An example of this problem is the potential of flexible lines and tubing to "wrap" around and thus encircle limbs or the neck. An active prevention strategy could include a stiff clear plastic sleeve that can be placed on intravenous lines and any other tubing/wire close to the PATIENT. This device helps prevent the tubing from wrapping, while maintaining the function of the ME EQUIPMENT and mobility of the PATIENT.

To the extent possible, MANUFACTURERS should avoid the use of small parts that could become a choking HAZARD. Particular care is needed to avoid problems with babies and younger children. Since children can be visitors in all HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENTS, attention to this problem is needed for any ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

ISO 8124-1 [10] specifies acceptable criteria for structural characteristics of toys intended for use by children in various age groups from birth to 14 years, such as shape, size, contour, and spacing. To the extent that small parts cannot be avoided, see 7.4.1 for the required for warnings. ISO 8124-1 could serve as a guide as it contains warnings and/or instructions for use with toys or their packaging.

~~**Subclause 12.3 – Additional technical description requirements applicable to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS**~~

The subclause allows the MANUFACTURER to provide a single disclosure for EMC IMMUNITY for dual use (i.e. LAY and professional use equipment). One disclosure is considered sufficient for both environments.

To assist MANUFACTURERS with meeting the requirements of this standard for usable instructions for use, this subclause takes into account the typical knowledge of LAY persons in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. This standard allows the MANUFACTURER to simplify the prescribed requirements of IEC 60601-1-2:2007, subclauses 5.2.2.1 and 5.2.2.2, with a simpler statement of the potential effects of radio transmitters and cell phones and a single distance that these devices should be kept from the ME EQUIPMENT based on the ME EQUIPMENT'S OWN IMMUNITY LEVELS. As cell phones are the most likely source of possible interference within the home, and their frequency and power are well understood, basing the distance, d , on cell phones allows a single value to be specified. The MANUFACTURER is required to use the most stringent of the distance calculations for this simplified approach.

Other radio transmitters are present in varying degrees in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, for example, ham radios, commercial radio, and television towers, particularly for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT intended for use outside of the home. MANUFACTURERS of TRANSIT-OPERABLE LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS need to adequately warn the user while keeping the instructions for use as simple as possible.

While it's important for all MANUFACTURERS, it is particularly important for those of TRANSIT-OPERABLE LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS to consider carefully the distance that can reasonably be expected between their equipment and cell phones in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. The relationship between this distance and a suitable IMMUNITY LEVEL at cell phone frequencies for their particular equipment can be calculated from Table 5 and Table 6 of IEC 60601-1-2:2007.

NOTE Writers of particular standards are encouraged to consider carefully the appropriate relationship between IMMUNITY LEVELS and effective RISK CONTROL by specifying a separation distance based on the INTENDED USE of their particular ME EQUIPMENT.

Subclause 12.4 – Additional requirements applicable to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS specified for use only in a shielded location

Shielded locations are not expected to be available in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. The construction and VERIFICATION of a shielded location in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is unrealistic.

Subclause 12.5 – Additional requirements for ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) tests

The committee considered in detail which probe should be used to determine which parts of the ENCLOSURE needed ESD testing. The committee decided that for the purposes of ESD testing, the standard test finger as specified in IEC 60601-1-2:2007 was sufficient. However to ensure that there is no ambiguity in the selection of the appropriate test finger for this subclause, the use of the standard test finger is specified.

LAY OPERATORS cannot be expected to understand how to avoid ESD contact or how to take ESD precautions. The exemption in 6.6.2.2 c) of IEC 60601-1-2:2007 is not reasonable in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

MANUFACTURERS need to consider that the standard ESD test levels are likely to be exceeded in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. ME EQUIPMENT should be constructed to reduce this increased risk to an acceptable level. Future editions of IEC 60601-1-2 are expected to address this issue.

Subclause 13.1 – Additional requirements for generation of ALARM SIGNALS

In the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, auditory ALARM SIGNALS are at least as important as visual ALARM SIGNALS. ALARM CONDITIONS that require either immediate or prompt OPERATOR action to protect the safety of the PATIENT are required to have an auditory ALARM SIGNAL. That ALARM SIGNAL is permitted to be present either at the ME EQUIPMENT or at a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM. By permitting a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM to provide the auditory ALARM SIGNALS, this standard permits designs that allow the PATIENT area to be quiet, e.g. the baby's room, while the ALARM SIGNALS are present where the OPERATOR is located, e.g. the parents' room.

Subclause 13.2 – Additional requirements for ALARM SIGNALS volume

Reducing the auditory ALARM SIGNAL volume below audible levels effectively initiates the ALARM OFF or AUDIO OFF ALARM SIGNAL ~~inactive~~ **inactivation** state. This standard requires such an action to indicate that ALARM SIGNALS are inactivated. Such an action is inappropriate for ~~a~~ **LIFE-SUPPORTING** ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS **intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT** unless it is connected to a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM that is capable of generating auditory ALARM SIGNALS.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

Annex B (informative)

Guide to marking and labelling requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

B.1 Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts

The requirements for marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT and their parts are found in 7.2 and in Table C.1 of the general standard. Additional requirements for marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.1.

Table B.1 – Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts

Description of marking	Subclause
Environmental conditions of transport and storage on ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.2
Environmental conditions of transport and storage on carrying case, if provided	4.2.2
Environmental operating conditions on ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.3
Environmental operating conditions on carrying case, if provided	4.2.3
IP classification on ENCLOSURE	7.2
IP classification on carrying case, if provided	7.2
'Keep dry' or symbol on ENCLOSURE, if required	7.2

B.2 Accompanying documents, general

The requirements for information to be included in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS are found in 7.9.1 and Table C.4 of the general standard. Additional requirements for general information to be included in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS relating to ME EQUIPMENT and in ME SYSTEMS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.2.

Table B.2 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, general

Description of requirement	Subclause
Contact the MANUFACTURER for assistance or reporting	7.3.1
Precautions to be taken in the event of changes in the performance	7.3.2
Precautions to be taken regarding the exposure to reasonably foreseeable environmental conditions	7.3.2
Information regarding medicinal substances to be delivered, if any	7.3.2
Information on any medicinal substances or human blood derivatives incorporated into the ME EQUIPMENT or ACCESSORIES, if any	7.3.2
Degree of accuracy claimed for a measuring function, if provided	7.3.2
Install and put into service in accordance with the information provided in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS statement	12.3
Postal address and either a telephone number or web address	7.3.1

B.3 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use

The requirements for information to be included in the instructions for use are found in 7.9.2 and Table C.5 of the general standard. Additional requirements for information to be included in the instructions for use are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.3.

Table B.3 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use

Description of requirement	Subclause
Alternative life-supporting methods to be employed following a loss or failure of the electrical power supply for LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT : description of	8.4
Cleaning, cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization instructions for single PATIENT use, as appropriate	7.4.7
Conditions that can unacceptably affect the ME EQUIPMENT: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – effects of lint, dust, light – list of known devices or other sources that can potentially cause interference problems – effects of degraded sensors and electrodes, or loosened electrodes, that can degrade performance or cause other problems – effects caused by pets, pests or children 	7.4.5
Contact details for the source of professional hygienic maintenance, if applicable	7.4.7
Diagrams, illustrations or photographs of the fully assembled and ready-to-operate ME EQUIPMENT	7.4.3
Diagrams, illustrations, or photographs showing proper connection of the PATIENT to the ME EQUIPMENT, ACCESSORIES and other equipment	7.4.4
Effect on safety of modifying the equipment: warning of	7.4.1
Environmental conditions of transport and storage of ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.2
Environmental operating conditions of ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.3
EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT	7.4.8
EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of the ME EQUIPMENT	7.4.8
Frequency of cleaning, cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization required when used on the same PATIENT, when appropriate	7.4.7
HAZARDS, likely consequences, and the precautions for reducing the RISK for each warning and safety notice, including where applicable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – strangulation or asphyxiation – small parts – allergic reactions – contact injuries 	7.4.1
Indication that it is necessary to clean and disinfect or clean and sterilize between PATIENT uses including methods for rinsing, drying, handling and storage until re-use	7.4.7
Indication that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be operated in a carrying case	4.2.3
Indication that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to transported or stored in a carrying case	4.2.2
Information concerning the proper disposal of the ME EQUIPMENT, its parts or ACCESSORIES	7.4.9
Install and put into service in accordance with the information provided in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS: statement regarding	12.3
Instruction for the LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION to contact its local authorities to determine the proper method of disposal of potentially bio-hazardous parts and ACCESSORIES: statement regarding, if applicable	7.4.9
Interconnection to equipment not described in the instructions for use: warning of	7.4.1
Meaning of the IP classification marking	7.4.5
Radio devices should be kept at least d away from the ME EQUIPMENT: statement that	12.3
Recommended placement of remote parts of a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM, if applicable	7.4.10
Required professional hygienic maintenance prior to re-use statement, if applicable	7.4.7
Requirements for INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, where applicable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – typical operation time or number of PROCEDURES 	7.4.2

Description of requirement	Subclause
– typical service life – behavior while a rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is charging	
SHELF LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT, if less than the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE	7.4.8
State of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, if applicable: how to determine	8.5
Time from switching “ON” until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for NORMAL USE, if exceeding 15 s	7.4.4
Time or number of PROCEDURES available following a loss or failure of the electrical power supply for LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT	8.4
Troubleshooting guide including necessary steps to be taken in the event of an ALARM CONDITION	7.4.6
Using ACCESSORIES, parts or material not described in the instructions for use: warning of	7.4.1
Using the ME EQUIPMENT outside its carrying case if some part of the protection required by this standard is provided by that carrying case: warning of	7.4.1

B.4 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description

The requirements for general information to be included in the technical description are found in subclause 7.9.3 and in Table C.6 of the general standard. Additional requirements for information to be included in the technical description are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.4.

Table B.4 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description

Description of requirement	Subclause
Alternative life-supporting methods that can be employed for longer periods of loss or failure of the electrical power supply for LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT ; description of	8.4
Connect and verify that the PROTECTIVE EARTH TERMINAL is connected to the external protective earthing system: warning to	7.5.1
ME EQUIPMENT installation, including correct protective earth (PE) connection, must only be carried out by qualified SERVICE PERSONNEL: warning of	7.5.1
Methods for cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization, if professional hygienic maintenance required	7.5.2
Specifications of the PERMANENTLY INSTALLED PROTECTIVE EARTH CONDUCTOR	7.5.1
Verify the integrity of the external protective earthing system: warning to	7.5.1

Annex C (informative)

Symbols on marking

In addition to the symbols described in Annex D of the general standard, the symbols described in Table C.1 can be used on ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

Table C.1 – General symbols (1 of 2)





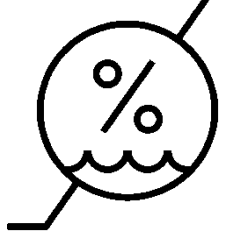
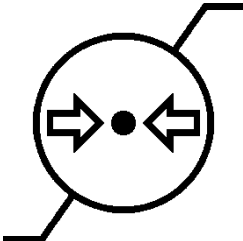
No.	Symbol	Reference	Title/Description/Requirement
1		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.4 (ISO 7000-0626 (2004-01))	Keep dry Indicates a medical device that needs to be protected from moisture.
2		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01))	Lower limit of temperature Indicates the lower limit of temperature to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The lower limit of temperature shall be indicated adjacent to the lower horizontal line.
3		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01))	Upper limit of temperature Indicates the upper limit of temperature to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The upper limit of temperature shall be indicated adjacent to the upper horizontal line.
4		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01))	Temperature limit Indicates the temperature limits to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The upper and lower limits of temperature shall be indicated adjacent to the upper and lower horizontal lines.
5		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620 (2004-01))	Humidity limitation Indicates the range of humidity to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The humidity limitation shall be indicated adjacent to the upper and lower horizontal lines.

Table C.1 (2 of 2)

No.	Symbol	Reference	Title/Description/Requirement
6		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621 (2004-01))	<p>Atmospheric pressure limitation</p> <p>Indicates the range of atmospheric pressure to which the medical device can be safely exposed.</p> <p>The atmospheric pressure limitations shall be indicated adjacent to the upper and lower horizontal lines.</p>

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

Bibliography

- [1] IEC 60038:2009, *IEC standard voltages*
- [2] IEC 60065:~~2004~~ 2014, *Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus – Safety requirements*
- [3] IEC 60335-1:~~2004~~ 2010, *Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 1: General requirements*
- [4] IEC 60364 (~~series~~ all parts), *Low-voltage electrical installations*
- [5] IEC 60601-1-9, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-9: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral standard: Requirements for environmentally conscious design*
- [6] IEC 60721-3-7:1995, *Classification of environmental conditions – Part 3: Classification of groups of environmental parameters and their severities – Section 7: Portable and non-stationary use*
- [7] IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001, *Classification of environmental conditions – Part 4-7: Guidance for the correlation and transformation of environmental condition classes of IEC 60721-3 to the environmental tests of IEC 60068 – Portable and non-stationary use*
- [8] IEC 60950-1:2005, *Information technology equipment – Safety – Part 1: General requirements*
IEC 60950-1:2005/AMD1:2009
IEC 60950-1:2005/AMD2:2013
- [9] IEC 61032:1997, *Protection of persons and equipment by enclosures – Probes for verification*
- [10] ISO 8124-1:~~2009~~ 2012, *Safety of toys – Part 1: Safety aspects related to mechanical and physical properties*
- [11] ISO 10651-2:2004, *Lung ventilators for medical use – Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Part 2: Home care ventilators for ventilator-dependent patients*
- [12] ISO/TR 16142:2006, *Medical devices – Guidance on the selection of standards in support of recognized essential principles of safety and performance of medical devices*
- [13] ASTM F2020-02, *Standard Practice for Design, Construction, and Procurement of Emergency Medical Services Systems (EMSS) Ambulances⁸⁾*
- [14] EN 13718-1:~~2002~~ 2008, ~~*Air, water and difficult terrain ambulances – Part 1: Medical devices interface Requirements for the continuity of patient care*~~ *Medical vehicles and their equipment – Air ambulances – Requirements for medical devices used in air ambulances*
- [15] MIL-STD-810F(3):2003, *Environmental engineering consideration and laboratory tests*

⁸⁾ Available at: <http://www.astm.org>

- [16] BELMANS, R. et al. *Towards improved electrical installations in European homes. Forum for European Electrical Domestic Safety (FEEDS) International Union of Electricity Applications*⁹⁾, 2004
- [17] DRAGO, D.A., DANNENBERG, A.L. Infant mechanical suffocation deaths in the United States, 1980–1997. *Pediatrics*, 1999; 103(5), p. e59
- [18] EMERY, J.L., et al. Apnea monitors and accidental strangulation. *BMJ*, 1992, 304, p. 117
- [19] NIXON, J.W., et al. Suffocation, choking, and strangulation in children in England and Wales: epidemiology and prevention. *Arch Dis Child*, 1995; 72, pp. 6 –10
- [20] RAUCHSCHWALBE, R., MANN, N.C.. Pediatric window-cord strangulations in the United States, 1981–1995. *JAMA*, 1997; 277, pp. 1696 –1698
- [21] SEHULSTER, L.M., et. al. *Guidelines for environmental infection control in health-care facilities. Recommendations from CDC and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC)*. American Society for Healthcare Engineering/American Hospital Association ¹⁰⁾, Chicago IL, 2004
- [22] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. *Write it Right, Recommendations for Developing User Instruction Manuals for Medical Devices Used in Home Health Care*, August 1993 ¹¹⁾.
- [23] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. *Guidance on Medical Device Patient Labeling; Final Guidance for Industry and FDA Reviewers*, 19 April 2001 ¹²⁾
- [24] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. *Assessing the Safety and Effectiveness of Home-Use In Vitro Diagnostic Devices (IVDs): Draft Points to Consider Regarding Labeling and Premarket Submissions*, October 1988 ¹³⁾
- [25] *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 86th edition, 2005-2006, Taylor & Francis
- [26] MIL-HDBK-310, *Global Climatic Data for Developing Military Products*

⁹⁾ Contactable at <http://www.uie.org>

¹⁰⁾ Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/gl_environinfection.html

¹¹⁾ Available at: www.fda.gov/cdrh/dsma/897.pdf

¹²⁾ Available at: www.fda.gov/cdrh/ohip/guidance/1128.pdf

¹³⁾ Available at: www.fda.gov/cdrh/ode/1359.pdf

Index of defined terms used in this collateral standard

ACCESS COVER	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.1
ACCESSIBLE PART	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.2
ACCESSORY	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.3
ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.4
AIR CLEARANCE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.5
ALARM CONDITION	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.4 IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.141
ALARM LIMIT	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.3
ALARM OFF	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.4
ALARM SIGNAL	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.9 IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.142
ALARM SYSTEM	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.11 IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.143
APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.8
BASIC SAFETY	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.10
BODY-WORN	3.4 IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.144
CLASS I	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.13
CLASS II	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.14
CREEPAGE DISTANCE	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.19
DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.17
(ELECTROMAGNETIC) EMISSION	IEC 60601-1-2:2014, 3.4
ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	IEC 60601-1-2:2007 2014, 3.9 3.6
EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES ENVIRONMENT	IEC 60601-1-12:2014, 3.1
ENCLOSURE	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.26
ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.27
EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.28
F-TYPE APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.29
FIXED	IEC 60601-1:2006/AMD1:2012, 3.30
FUNCTION	IEC 60601-1-2:2007, 3.11
FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION	IEC 60601-1:2005 2006, 3.33
FUNCTIONAL EARTH TERMINAL	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.35
HAND-HELD	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.37
HAZARD	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.39
HAZARDOUS SITUATION	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.40
HIGH PRIORITY	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.22
HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT	3.2 3.1
IMMUNITY (to a disturbance)	IEC 60601-1-2:2007, 3.13
IMMUNITY LEVEL	IEC 60601-1-2:2007, 3.14
INFORMATION SIGNAL	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.23
INTENDED USE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.44
INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.45
INTERNALLY POWERED	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.46
LAY	3.3 3.2
LEAKAGE CURRENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.47
LIFE-SUPPORTING ME EQUIPMENT OF ME SYSTEM	LOW PRIORITY

LOW PRIORITY	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.27
MANUFACTURER	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.55
MEANS OF OPERATOR PROTECTION (MOOP)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.58
MEANS OF PATIENT PROTECTION (MOPP)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.59
MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT (ME EQUIPMENT)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.63
MEDICAL EQUIPMENT SYSTEM (ME SYSTEM)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.64
MEDIUM PRIORITY	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.28
MOBILE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.65
NETWORK/DATA COUPLING	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.68
NOMINAL (value)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.69
NORMAL USE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.71
OPERATOR	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.73
OPERATOR PROFILE	IEC 60601-1-6:2010, 3.2
PATIENT	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.76
PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.80
PERMANENTLY INSTALLED	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.84
PORTABLE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.85
PROCEDURE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.88
PROCESS (PROCESSING)	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.89
PROGRAMMABLE ELECTRICAL MEDICAL SYSTEM (PEMS)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.90
PROPERLY INSTALLED	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.92
PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.94
PUBLIC MAINS NETWORK	IEC 60601-1-2:2007, 3.24
RATED (value)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.97
RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.101
RISK	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.102
RISK ANALYSIS	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.103
RISK CONTROL	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.105
RISK MANAGEMENT	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.107
RISK MANAGEMENT FILE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.108
SERVICE PERSONNEL	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.113
SHELF LIFE	3-5 3.3
SIGNAL INPUT/OUTPUT PART (SIP/SOP)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.115
STATIONARY	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.118
SUPPLY MAINS	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.120
TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.36
THERMAL STABILITY	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.125
TOOL	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.127
TOUCH CURRENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.129
TRANSIT-OPERABLE	3-6 3.4
TRANSPORTABLE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.130
TYPE B APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.132
TYPE BF APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.133

TYPE OF APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.134
USABILITY	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.136
USABILITY ENGINEERING	3.7 IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.137
USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE	3.8 IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.147
USABILITY SPECIFICATION	3.9 IEC 62366:2007, 3.20
VALIDATION	3.10 IEC 62366:2007, 3.26
VERIFICATION	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.138

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

NORME INTERNATIONALE



Medical electrical equipment –

**Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance –
Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical
electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment**

Appareils électromédicaux –

**Partie 1-11: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances
essentiels – Norme Collatérale: Exigences pour les appareils électromédicaux
et les systèmes électromédicaux utilisés dans l'environnement des soins à
domicile**

CONTENTS

FOREWORD.....	5
INTRODUCTION.....	8
1 Scope, object and related standards.....	9
1.1 * Scope.....	9
1.2 Object.....	9
1.3 Related standards.....	9
1.3.1 IEC 60601-1	9
1.3.2 Particular standards.....	10
2 Normative references	10
3 Terms and definitions	11
4 General requirements	12
4.1 * Additional requirements for SUPPLY MAINS for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	12
4.2 * Environmental conditions for ME EQUIPMENT	12
4.2.1 General	12
4.2.2 * Environmental conditions of transport and storage between uses	13
4.2.3 * Environmental operating conditions	14
5 * General requirements for testing ME EQUIPMENT.....	16
6 * Classification of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	17
7 ME EQUIPMENT identification, marking and documents	17
7.1 * USABILITY of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.....	17
7.2 * Additional requirements for marking of IP classification	18
7.3 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS	18
7.3.1 Contact information	18
7.3.2 LAY OPERATOR briefing information	18
7.4 Instructions for use	19
7.4.1 Additional requirements for warning and safety notices.....	19
7.4.2 * Additional requirements for an electrical power source	19
7.4.3 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT description.....	20
7.4.4 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT start-up PROCEDURE	20
7.4.5 Additional requirements for operating instructions.....	20
7.4.6 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT messages.....	21
7.4.7 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection and sterilization.....	21
7.4.8 Additional requirements for maintenance	21
7.4.9 Additional requirements for environmental protection	21
7.4.10 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	22
7.5 Technical description	22
7.5.1 PERMANENTLY INSTALLED CLASS I ME EQUIPMENT	22
7.5.2 Additional requirements for professional hygienic maintenance	22
8 Protection against excessive temperatures and other HAZARDS	22
8.1 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	22
8.2 * Additional requirements for sterilization of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	23
8.3 Additional requirements for ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS.....	23
8.3.1 * Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT	23

8.3.2	* Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME SYSTEMS	23
8.4	Additional requirements for interruption of the power supply/SUPPLY MAINS to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEM	23
8.5	Additional requirements for an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE	24
8.5.1	* Indication of state	24
8.5.2	Accessibility of small INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES	25
9	Accuracy of controls and instruments and protection against hazardous outputs	25
10	Construction of ME EQUIPMENT	25
10.1	* Additional requirements for mechanical strength	25
10.1.1	General requirements for mechanical strength	25
10.1.2	* Requirements for mechanical strength for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT	27
10.1.3	* Requirements for mechanical strength for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT	28
10.2	Additional requirements for actuating parts of controls of ME EQUIPMENT	29
11	* Protection against strangulation or asphyxiation	30
12	Additional requirements for ELECTROMAGNETIC EMISSIONS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	30
13	Additional requirements for ALARM SYSTEMS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	30
13.1	* Additional requirement for generation of ALARM SIGNALS	30
13.2	* Additional requirement for ALARM SIGNAL volume	30
Annex A (informative)	General guidance and rationale	31
A.1	General guidance	31
A.2	Rationale for particular clauses and subclauses	32
Annex B (informative)	Guide to marking and labelling requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS	51
B.1	Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts	51
B.2	ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, general	51
B.3	ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use	51
B.4	ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description	53
Annex C (informative)	Symbols on marking	54
Bibliography	56
Index of defined terms used in this collateral standard	58
Figure 1	– Small finger probe Ø 5,6	17
Figure A.1	– Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature	36
Table 1	– Mechanical strength test applicability, non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE	26
Table 2	– Mechanical strength test applicability, TRANSIT-OPERABLE	27
Table A.1	– Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature	37
Table A.2	– Summary by use of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE ingress of water and particulate matter requirements	46
Table A.3	– Qualitative assessment of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT subjected to shock and vibration	47
Table B.1	– Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts	51
Table B.2	– ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, general	51
Table B.3	– ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use	52

Table B.4 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description.....	53
Table C.1 – General symbols.....	54

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT –**Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment**

FOREWORD

- 1) The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, IEC publishes International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports, Publicly Available Specifications (PAS) and Guides (hereafter referred to as "IEC Publication(s)"). Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
- 2) The formal decisions or agreements of IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested IEC National Committees.
- 3) IEC Publications have the form of recommendations for international use and are accepted by IEC National Committees in that sense. While all reasonable efforts are made to ensure that the technical content of IEC Publications is accurate, IEC cannot be held responsible for the way in which they are used or for any misinterpretation by any end user.
- 4) In order to promote international uniformity, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC Publications transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional publications. Any divergence between any IEC Publication and the corresponding national or regional publication shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
- 5) IEC itself does not provide any attestation of conformity. Independent certification bodies provide conformity assessment services and, in some areas, access to IEC marks of conformity. IEC is not responsible for any services carried out by independent certification bodies.
- 6) All users should ensure that they have the latest edition of this publication.
- 7) No liability shall attach to IEC or its directors, employees, servants or agents including individual experts and members of its technical committees and IEC National Committees for any personal injury, property damage or other damage of any nature whatsoever, whether direct or indirect, or for costs (including legal fees) and expenses arising out of the publication, use of, or reliance upon, this IEC Publication or any other IEC Publications.
- 8) Attention is drawn to the Normative references cited in this publication. Use of the referenced publications is indispensable for the correct application of this publication.
- 9) Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this IEC Publication may be the subject of patent rights. IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

International standard IEC 60601-1-11 has been prepared by a joint working group of IEC subcommittee 62A: Common aspects of electrical equipment used in medical practice of IEC technical committee 62: Electrical equipment in medical practice and ISO subcommittee SC3: Lung ventilators and related devices, of ISO technical committee 121: Anaesthetic and respiratory equipment.

It is published as a double logo standard.

This second edition constitutes a collateral standard to IEC 60601-1 (third edition, including Amendment 1): *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance*, hereafter referred to as the general standard.

This second edition cancels and replaces the first edition of IEC 60601-1-11, published in 2010, and constitutes a technical revision.

The most significant changes with respect to the previous edition include the following modifications:

- correction of test method for relative humidity control at temperatures above 35 °C;
- redrafting of subclauses that altered instead of adding to the general standard or other collateral standards; and
- harmonizing with the changes to the amendments to the general standard and other collateral standards.

The text of this collateral standard is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
62A/959/FDIS	62A/978/RVD

Full information on the voting for the approval of this collateral standard can be found in the report on voting indicated in the above table. In ISO, the standard has been approved by 17 P-members out of 17 having cast a vote.

This publication has been drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

In the IEC 60601 series of publications, collateral standards specify general requirements for safety applicable to:

- a subgroup of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT (e.g. radiological equipment); or
- a specific characteristic of all MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, not fully addressed in the general standard (e.g. ALARM SYSTEMS).

In this collateral standard, the following print types are used:

- requirements and definitions: roman type;
- *test specifications: italic type*;
- informative material appearing outside of tables, such as notes, examples and references: in smaller type. Normative text of tables is also in a smaller type;
- TERMS DEFINED IN CLAUSE 3 OF THE GENERAL STANDARD, IN THIS COLLATERAL STANDARD OR AS NOTED: SMALL CAPITALS.

In referring to the structure of this collateral standard, the term

- “clause” means one of the numbered divisions within the table of contents, inclusive of all subdivisions (e.g. Clause 7 includes subclauses 7.1, 7.2, etc.);
- “subclause” means a numbered subdivision of a clause (e.g. 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3.1 are all subclauses of Clause 7).

References to clauses within this standard are preceded by the term “Clause” followed by the clause number. References to subclauses within this collateral standard are by number only.

In this standard, the conjunctive “or” is used as an “inclusive or” so a statement is true if any combination of the conditions is true.

The verbal forms used in this standard conform to usage described in Annex H of the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2. For the purposes of this standard, the auxiliary verb:

- “shall” means that compliance with a requirement or a test is mandatory for compliance with this standard;

- “should” means that compliance with a requirement or a test is recommended but is not mandatory for compliance with this standard;
- “may” is used to describe a permissible way to achieve compliance with a requirement or test.

Clauses, subclauses and definitions for which a rationale is provided in informative Annex A are marked with an asterisk (*).

A list of all parts of the IEC 60601 series, published under the general title: *Medical electrical equipment*, can be found on the IEC website.

The committee has decided that the contents of this publication will remain unchanged until the stability date indicated on the IEC web site under "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" in the data related to the specific publication. At this date, the publication will be

- reconfirmed,
- withdrawn,
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

NOTE The attention of Member Bodies and National Committees is drawn to the fact that equipment manufacturers and testing organizations may need a transitional period following publication of a new, amended or revised ISO or IEC publication in which to make products in accordance with the new requirements and to equip themselves for conducting new or revised tests. It is the recommendation of the committee that the content of this publication be adopted for mandatory implementation nationally not earlier than 3 years from the date of publication.

IMPORTANT – The 'colour inside' logo on the cover page of this publication indicates that it contains colours which are considered to be useful for the correct understanding of its contents. Users should therefore print this document using a colour printer.

INTRODUCTION

Medical practice is increasingly using MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT and MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS for monitoring, treatment or diagnosis of PATIENTS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT (see 3.1). The safety of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT in this uncontrolled environment with regard to the electrical installation and its related safety and protection means is a cause for concern.

The potential lack of training of the LAY OPERATOR and possibly of those supervising the use of the MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT or MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEM and their level of education need to be addressed in the development of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS and in the relevant marking on the equipment itself so that this material can be understood. This collateral standard gives special guidance on how this should be addressed in the instructions for use.

This collateral standard was developed with contributions from clinicians, engineers and regulators. The terminology, requirements, general recommendations and guidance of this collateral standard are intended to be useful for MANUFACTURERS of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT and MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS and for technical committees responsible for the development of particular standards.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11:2015 (REV) 2015

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT –

Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment

1 Scope, object and related standards

1.1 * Scope

This International Standard applies to the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT and MEDICAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, as defined in 3.1, and specified by the MANUFACTURER in the instructions for use. This International Standard applies regardless of whether the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR or by trained healthcare personnel.

The HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT includes:

- the dwelling place in which a PATIENT lives;
- other places where PATIENTS are present both indoors and outdoors, excluding professional healthcare facility environments where OPERATORS with medical training are continually available when PATIENTS are present.

This International Standard does not apply to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended solely for use in the EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES ENVIRONMENT, covered by IEC 60601-1-12 or solely for use in professional healthcare facilities covered by IEC 60601-1 without the additions of IEC 60601-1-12 or this collateral standard. Nonetheless, ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS can be intended for multiple use environments, and as such, if also intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, are within the scope of this standard.

EXAMPLE ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended for both the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT and the professional healthcare facility environment.

NOTE HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS can frequently be used in locations with unreliable electrical sources and poor electrical grounding.

1.2 Object

The object of this collateral standard is to specify general requirements that are in addition to those of the general standard and to serve as the basis for particular standards.

1.3 Related standards

1.3.1 IEC 60601-1

For ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS, this collateral standard complements IEC 60601-1.

When referring to IEC 60601-1 or to this collateral standard, either individually or in combination, the following conventions are used:

- "the general standard" designates IEC 60601-1 alone;
- "this collateral standard" designates IEC 60601-1-11 alone;
- "this standard" designates the combination of the general standard and this collateral standard.

1.3.2 Particular standards

A requirement in a particular standard takes priority over the corresponding requirement in this collateral standard.

2 Normative references

The following documents, in whole or in part, are normatively referenced in this document and are indispensable for its application. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

NOTE 1 The way in which these referenced documents are cited in normative requirements determines the extent (in whole or in part) to which they apply.

NOTE 2 Informative references are listed in the bibliography on page 56.

CISPR 11:2009, *Industrial, scientific and medical equipment – Radio-frequency disturbance characteristics – Limits and methods of measurement*

IEC 60068-2-27:2008, *Environmental testing – Part 2-27: Tests – Test Ea and guidance: Shock*

IEC 60068-2-31:2008, *Environmental testing – Part 2-31: Tests – Test Ec: Rough handling shocks, primarily for equipment-type specimens*

IEC 60068-2-64:2008, *Environmental testing Part 2-64: Tests – Test Fh: Vibration, broadband random and guidance*

IEC 60529:1989, *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*

IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999

IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 ¹⁾

IEC 60601-1:2005, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance*

IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012 ²⁾

IEC 60601-1-2:2014, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic disturbances – Requirements and tests*

IEC 60601-1-6:2010, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-6: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral standard: Usability*

IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013) ³⁾

IEC 60601-1-8:2006, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-8: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral standard: General requirements, tests and guidance for alarm systems in medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems*

IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 ⁴⁾

¹⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 2.2 (2013) including IEC 60529:1989 and its Amendment 1 (1999) and Amendment 2 (2013).

²⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 3.1(2012) including IEC 60601-1:2005 and its Amendment 1 (2012).

³⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 3.1 (2013) including IEC 60601-1-6:2010 and its Amendment 1 (2013).

⁴⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 2.1 (2012) including IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and its Amendment 1 (2012).

IEC 60601-1-12:2014, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems intended for use in the emergency medical services environment*

IEC 62366:2007, *Medical devices – Application of usability engineering to medical devices*
IEC 62366:2007/AMD1:2014 ⁵⁾

ISO 7000, *Graphical symbols for use on equipment — Registered symbols*. Available from:
<http://www.graphical-symbols.info/equipment>

ISO 7010:2011, *Graphical symbols – Safety colours and safety signs – Registered safety signs*

ISO 7010:2011/AMD1:2012

ISO 7010:2011/AMD2:2012

ISO 7010:2011/AMD3:2012

ISO 7010:2011/AMD4:2013

ISO 7010:2011/AMD5:2014

ISO 15223-1:2012, *Medical devices — Symbols to be used with medical device labels, labelling and information to be supplied — Part 1: General requirements*

3 Terms and definitions

For the purposes of this document, the terms and definitions given in IEC 60601-1:2005 and IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, IEC 60601-1-2:2014, IEC 60601-1-6:2010 and IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013, IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012, IEC 60601-1-12:2014, IEC 62366:2007 and the following definitions apply.

NOTE 1 Where the terms “voltage” and “current” are used in this document, they mean the r.m.s. values of an alternating, direct or composite voltage or current unless stated otherwise.

NOTE 2 The term “electrical equipment” is used to mean ME EQUIPMENT or other electrical equipment. This standard also uses the term “equipment” to mean ME EQUIPMENT or other electrical or non-electrical equipment in the context of an ME SYSTEM.

NOTE 3 An index of defined terms used in this collateral standard is found beginning on page 58.

3.1

HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT

dwelling place in which a PATIENT lives or other places where PATIENTS are present, excluding professional healthcare facility environments where OPERATORS with medical training are continually available when PATIENTS are present

EXAMPLES In a car, bus, train, boat or plane, in a wheelchair or walking outdoors.

Note 1 to entry: Professional healthcare facilities include hospitals, physician offices, freestanding surgical centres, dental offices, freestanding birthing centres, limited care facilities, first aid rooms or rescue rooms, multiple treatment facilities and emergency medical services.

Note 2 to entry: For the purpose of this collateral standard, nursing homes are considered HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENTS.

Note 3 to entry: Other places where a PATIENT is present include the outdoor environment, while working and in vehicles.

⁵⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 2.1 (2014) including IEC 62366:2007 and Amendment 1 (2014).

3.2

* LAY

<adj> term referring to non-professional or professional without relevant specialized training

EXAMPLES LAY OPERATOR, LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION.

3.3

SHELF LIFE

maximum period of time that an item can be stored prior to its first use under the conditions described in its labelling and remain suitable for use

3.4

TRANSIT-OPERABLE

<adj> term referring to TRANSPORTABLE equipment whose INTENDED USE includes operation while it is being moved

EXAMPLES TRANSPORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is BODY-WORN, HAND-HELD, attached to a wheelchair, or used in a car, bus, train, boat or plane.

Note 1 to entry: For the purpose of this standard, TRANSIT-OPERABLE use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT can include use indoors, outdoors and in vehicles.

4 General requirements

4.1 * Additional requirements for SUPPLY MAINS for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

For ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, the characteristics of the SUPPLY MAINS specified in 4.10.2 of the general standard apply, with the following additions.

SUPPLY MAINS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall be assumed to have the following characteristics: no voltage in excess of 110 % or lower than 85 % of the NOMINAL voltage between any of the conductors of the system or between any of these conductors and earth.

For ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT, SUPPLY MAINS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall be assumed to have the following characteristics: no voltage in excess of 110 % or lower than 80 % of the NOMINAL voltage between any of the conductors of the system or between any of these conductors and earth.

The RATED range of NOMINAL voltage of the ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall include at least 12,4 V to 15,1 V for operation from 12 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS and at least 24,8 V to 30,3 V for operation from 24 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS.

ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE during and following a 30 s dip to 10 V from a 12 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS and during and following a 30 s dip to 20 V for operation from a 24 V d.c. SUPPLY MAINS.

4.2 * Environmental conditions for ME EQUIPMENT

4.2.1 General

All environmental tests at temperatures below +5 °C need not be performed with humidity control of the test chamber.

NOTE In IEC 60601-1:2005 and IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, the MANUFACTURER specifies the permissible conditions of use, including conditions for transport and storage in the technical description (see 7.9.3.1, second dash). These conditions are referenced in requirements for testing throughout the general standard, (e.g. 5.3 and 11.1.1).

4.2.2 * Environmental conditions of transport and storage between uses

The instructions for use shall indicate the permissible environmental conditions of transport and storage of ME EQUIPMENT after the ME EQUIPMENT has been removed from its protective packaging and subsequently between uses.

Unless otherwise indicated in the instructions for use or if the ME EQUIPMENT is STATIONARY, the ME EQUIPMENT shall remain operational in NORMAL USE within its specification and the requirements of this standard after transport or storage in the following environmental range:

- – 25 °C to + 5 °C, and
- + 5 °C to + 35 °C at a relative humidity up to 90 %, non-condensing;
- > 35 °C to 70 °C at a water vapour pressure up to 50 hPa

after having been removed from its protective packaging and subsequently between uses.

NOTE 1 This represents class 7K3 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7] ⁶⁾.

If the instructions for use state a more restricted range of environmental transport and storage conditions between uses, these environmental conditions shall be:

- justified in the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE;
- marked on the ME EQUIPMENT, unless such marking is not practicable, in which case the more restricted range need only be disclosed in the instructions for use; and
- marked on the carrying case, if the instructions for use indicate that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be transported or stored in a carrying case between uses.

Symbols 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01)), 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01)) or 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the temperature range (see Table C.1, symbols 2, 3 and 4). Symbol 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the humidity range (see Table C.1, symbol 5) and symbol 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the atmospheric pressure range (see Table C.1, symbol 6). Where ME EQUIPMENT has different markings for conditions of transport and storage between uses, continuous operating conditions (see 4.2.3.1) and transient operating conditions (see 4.2.3.2), those markings shall be accompanied by supplementary marking (e.g. appropriate wording) except where the respective applicability would be obvious (e.g. limits for transport and storage between uses on the carrying case and limits for operation on the ME EQUIPMENT itself).

Compliance is checked by the following test and, when a more restricted range is stated in the instructions for use, inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

a) *Prepare the ME EQUIPMENT for transport or storage according to instructions for use.*

EXAMPLES Removal of batteries, emptying fluid reservoirs.

b) *Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental transport and storage conditions (temperature 0 °C):*

- *for at least 16 h; or*
- *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.*

c) *Then expose the ME EQUIPMENT to 34 °C ± 4 °C and 90 % – 0 % + 6 % relative humidity until the test chamber reaches equilibrium. The transition from low to high temperature conditions should be made slowly enough to provide a non-condensing environment. Hold for at least 2 h.*

⁶⁾ Figures in square brackets refer to the Bibliography.

d) *Then expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified environmental transport and storage conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, (temperature $+4_0^{\circ}\text{C}$):*

- *for at least 16 h; or*
- *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.*

NOTE 2 The intent of specifying a minimum duration of the exposure to both the low and high temperature conditions is to ensure that the entire ME EQUIPMENT reaches the stated conditions.

e) *At the end of this conditioning period, allow the ME EQUIPMENT to return and stabilize at the operating conditions of NORMAL USE.*

f) *Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.*

4.2.3 * Environmental operating conditions

4.2.3.1 Continuous operating conditions

The instructions for use shall indicate the permissible environmental operating conditions of the ME EQUIPMENT.

NOTE 1 The environmental operating conditions should be marked on TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT, unless such marking is not practicable, in which case the environmental operating conditions need only be disclosed in the instructions for use.

Unless otherwise indicated in the instructions for use, the ME EQUIPMENT shall comply with its specifications and all the requirements of this standard when operated in NORMAL USE under the following environmental operating conditions:

- a temperature range of $+5^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+40^{\circ}\text{C}$;
- a relative humidity range of 15 % to 90 %, non-condensing, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa; and
- an atmospheric pressure range of 700 hPa to 1 060 hPa.

NOTE 2 This represents class 7K1 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

If the instructions for use state a more restricted range of environmental operating conditions, these conditions shall be:

- justified in the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE;
- marked on the ME EQUIPMENT, unless such marking is not practicable, in which case the more restricted range need only be disclosed in the instructions for use; and
- marked on the carrying case if the instructions for use indicate that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be operated in a carrying case.

Symbols 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01)), 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01)) or 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the temperature range (see Table C.1, symbols 2, 3 and 4). Symbol 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the humidity range (see Table C.1, symbol 5) and symbol 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621 (2004-01)) of ISO 15223-1:2012 may be used to mark the atmospheric pressure range (see Table C.1, symbol 6). Where ME EQUIPMENT has different markings for continuous operating conditions and transient operating conditions (4.2.3.2), those markings shall be accompanied by supplementary marking (e.g. appropriate wording).

The ME EQUIPMENT shall comply with its specifications and all the requirements of this standard when operated in NORMAL USE under the specified environmental operating conditions.

Compliance is checked by the following test and, when a more restricted range is stated in the instructions for use, inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE:

- a) Set up the ME EQUIPMENT for operation according to its INTENDED USE.
- b) Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to $20\text{ °C} \pm 4\text{ °C}$:
 - for at least 6 h, or
 - confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.
- c) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.
- d) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while at the lowest specified atmospheric pressure. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.
- e) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while at the highest specified atmospheric pressure. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.

NOTE 3 For ME EQUIPMENT that is pressure-sensitive (e.g. utilizes or measures gas or pressures or uses membrane switches) evaluation of BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while the pressure changes in either direction can be needed.

- f) Relieve the pressure in the pressure chamber.
- g) Cool the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental operating conditions (temperature $\begin{smallmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{smallmatrix}\text{ °C}$ and relative humidity less than or equal to 15 %).

NOTE 4 Some test chambers can require a mode change to reach this combination of temperature and humidity.

- h) Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at its lowest specified environmental operating conditions:
 - for at least 6 h, or
 - confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.
- i) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing.
- j) Warm the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified continuous environmental operating conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, (temperature $\begin{smallmatrix} +4 \\ 0 \end{smallmatrix}\text{ °C}$). The transition from low to high conditions should be made slowly enough to provide a non-condensing environment.
- k) Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at the conditions of j):
 - for at least 6 h, or
 - confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.
- l) Evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it provides BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT or dielectric strength testing.

4.2.3.2 * Environmental shock to TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

If the instructions for use state a wider range of continuous environmental operating conditions than those indicated in 4.2.3.1, the TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE in the presence of condensation and thermal shock resulting from rapid changes in environmental temperature and humidity during INTENDED USE.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

- a) Set up the ME EQUIPMENT for operation according to its INTENDED USE.
- b) Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental operating conditions (temperature $\begin{smallmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{smallmatrix}\text{ °C}$ and relative humidity less than or equal to 15 %).

- c) *Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at its lowest specified environmental operating conditions:*
 - *for at least 6 h, or*
 - *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.*
- d) *Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified environmental operating conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, within 5 min (temperature $\begin{smallmatrix} +4 \\ 0 \end{smallmatrix}^{\circ}\text{C}$).*
- e) *While maintaining the environment of the ME EQUIPMENT to the conditions in d), evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it continues to provide BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE until the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY or for at least 2 h. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT or dielectric strength testing because of the pollution degree ratings required by the general standard.*

A separate test sample may be used for the following tests.

- f) *Set up the ME EQUIPMENT for operation according to its INTENDED USE.*
- g) *Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its highest specified environmental operating conditions, but not requiring a water vapour partial pressure greater than 50 hPa, (temperature $\begin{smallmatrix} +4 \\ 0 \end{smallmatrix}^{\circ}\text{C}$).*
- h) *Hold the ME EQUIPMENT at its highest specified environmental operating conditions:*
 - *for at least 6 h, or*
 - *confirm that the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY for at least 2 h.*
- i) *Expose the ME EQUIPMENT to its lowest specified environmental operating conditions (temperature $\begin{smallmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{smallmatrix}^{\circ}\text{C}$ and relative humidity less than or equal to 15 %) within 5 min.*
- j) *While maintaining the environment of the ME EQUIPMENT to the conditions in i), evaluate the ME EQUIPMENT to its specifications and confirm that it continues to provide BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE until the ME EQUIPMENT reaches THERMAL STABILITY or for at least 2 h. The evaluation of BASIC SAFETY need not include LEAKAGE CURRENT or dielectric strength testing.*

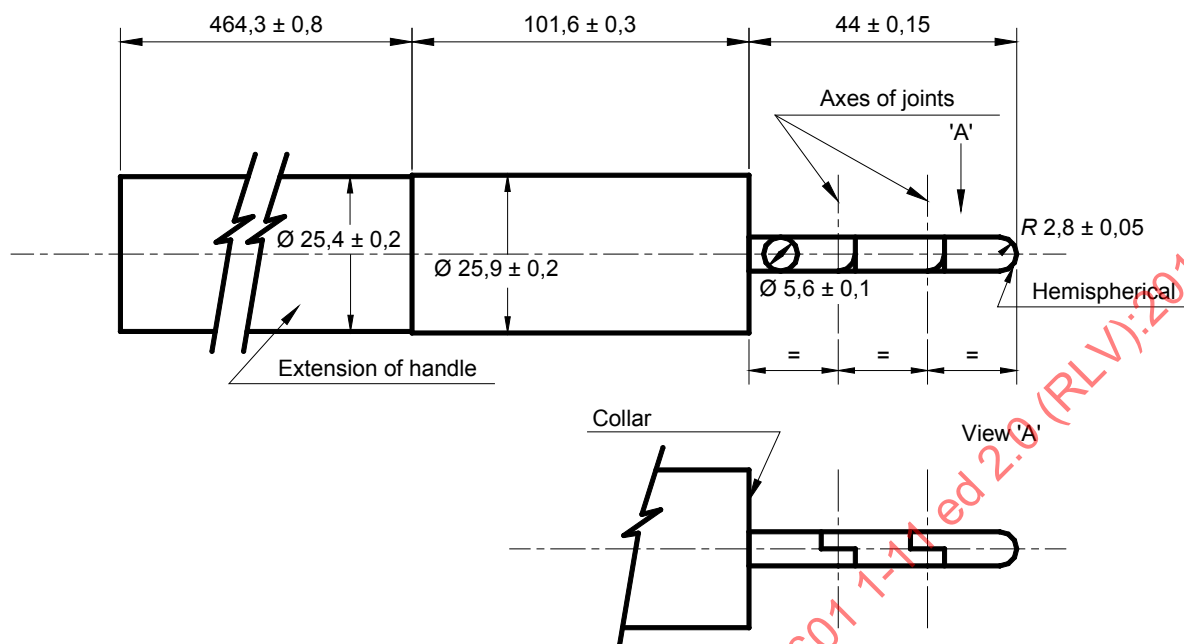
NOTE While the ME EQUIPMENT is warming or cooling, the evaluation of BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE is repeated for two hours or until THERMAL STABILITY is reached.

5 * General requirements for testing ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 5.9.2.1 of the general standard, parts of ME EQUIPMENT that are to be regarded as ACCESSIBLE PARTS are identified by inspection and, where necessary, by testing. In case of doubt, a part of ME EQUIPMENT that is to be regarded as an ACCESSIBLE PART is determined by a test with the small finger probe shown in Figure 1, applied in a bent or straight position:

- for all positions of the ME EQUIPMENT when operated as in NORMAL USE; and
- after opening ACCESS COVERS and removal of parts, including lamps, fuses and fuse holders, when:
 - i) the ACCESS COVERS can be opened without the use of a TOOL, or
 - ii) the instructions for use instruct a LAY OPERATOR to open the relevant ACCESS COVER.

Dimensions in millimetres



IEC

- Finger: metal material
- Handle: insulating material

NOTE 1 The extension of the handle represents the arm of the child.

The handle is provided with an extension 464,3 mm long, and the probe should be applied with or without this extension, whichever is the more onerous condition. Both joints shall permit movement in the same plane and the same direction through an angle of 90°.

NOTE 2 This probe is intended to simulate access to hazardous parts by children of 36 months or less.

[IEC 61032:1997 [9], Figure 13]

Figure 1 – Small finger probe Ø 5,6

6 * Classification of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements in 6.2 of the general standard, unless the ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is PERMANENTLY INSTALLED, it:

- shall be CLASS II or INTERNALLY POWERED;
- shall not have a FUNCTIONAL EARTH TERMINAL; and
- if equipped with APPLIED PARTS, shall have either TYPE BF APPLIED PARTS or TYPE CF APPLIED PARTS.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

7 ME EQUIPMENT identification, marking and documents

7.1 * USABILITY of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

In addition to the requirements of 7.1.1 of the general standard, the USABILITY of the identification, marking and ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS intended for the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION shall be evaluated based on an OPERATOR PROFILE that includes a minimum of eight years of education.

ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT should be designed to be simple to use and not require reference to complex ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the results of the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

7.2 * Additional requirements for marking of IP classification

In addition to the requirements of 7.2.9 of the general standard, if some or all of the protection against the ingress of water or particulate matter is provided by a carrying case, then

- the ENCLOSURE of the ME EQUIPMENT shall be marked with its degree of protection and safety sign ISO 7010-W001 (see IEC 60601-1:2005, Table D.2, safety sign 2),
 - as well as with 'keep dry', or
 - the symbol ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.4 (ISO 7000-0626 (2004-01)) (see Table C.1, symbol 1).
- the carrying case shall be marked with its degree of protection.

A carrying case that is not intended to provide protection against the ingress of water or particulate matter need not be marked.

EXAMPLE If for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT, the ENCLOSURE provides the protection against the ingress of particulate matter and the carrying case provides the protection against the ingress of water, the ENCLOSURE of the ME EQUIPMENT would be marked IP20 and the carrying case would be marked IP02.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by application of the tests and criteria of 7.1.2 and 7.1.3 of the general standard.

7.3 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

7.3.1 Contact information

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.1 and 16.2 of the general standard, the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR shall indicate that the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION should contact the MANUFACTURER or the MANUFACTURER'S representative:

- for assistance, if needed, in setting up, using or maintaining the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM; or
- to report unexpected operation or events.

The ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS shall include a postal address and either a telephone number or web address through which the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION can contact the MANUFACTURER or the MANUFACTURER'S representative.

7.3.2 LAY OPERATOR briefing information

When appropriate in addition to the requirements of 7.9.1 and 16.2 of the general standard, the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS shall include the details necessary for the healthcare professional to brief the LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION on any known contraindication(s) to the use of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM and any precautions to be taken. This shall include:

- precautions to be taken in the event of changes in the performance of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM;
- precautions to be taken regarding the exposure of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM to reasonably foreseeable environmental conditions (e.g. to magnetic fields, electromagnetic fields, external electrical influences, ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE, pressure or variations in pressure, acceleration, thermal ignition sources);

- adequate information regarding any medicinal substances that the ME EQUIPMENT is designed to administer, including any limitations in the choice of substances to be delivered;
- information on any medicinal substances or human blood derivatives incorporated into the ME EQUIPMENT or ACCESSORIES as an integral part; and
- the degree of accuracy claimed for ME EQUIPMENT with a measuring function.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.

7.4 Instructions for use

7.4.1 Additional requirements for warning and safety notices

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.2 and 16.2 c) of the general standard for each warning and safety sign, the instructions for use shall describe the nature of the HAZARD, likely consequences that could occur if the advice is not followed, and the precautions for reducing the RISK.

If applicable, the instructions for use shall address the issues of:

- strangulation due to cables and hoses, particularly due to excessive length;

EXAMPLE 1 Strangulation resulting from baby or child entanglement in monitoring cables.

EXAMPLE 2 Strangulation resulting from breathing system hoses.

- small parts being inhaled or swallowed;

EXAMPLE 3 Choking resulting from a child swallowing a small part that has become detached from the ME EQUIPMENT.

- potential allergic reactions to accessible materials used in the ME EQUIPMENT;

EXAMPLE 4 Natural rubber latex sensitivity.

- contact injuries.

EXAMPLE 5 Skin irritation due to prolonged exposure to APPLIED PARTS or other ACCESSORIES.

If applicable, the instructions for use shall include warnings to the effect that it can be unsafe to:

- use ACCESSORIES, detachable parts and materials not described in the instructions for use (see 7.9.2.14 of the general standard);
- interconnect this equipment with other equipment not described in the instructions for use (see 16.2 c) indent 9) of the general standard);
- modify the equipment;
- use the ME EQUIPMENT outside its carrying case if some part of the protection required by this standard is provided by that carrying case (see 8.3.1 and 10.1).

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use and inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

7.4.2 * Additional requirements for an electrical power source

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.4 of the general standard, if ME EQUIPMENT is equipped with an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE and the BASIC SAFETY or ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE is dependent on the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the instructions for use shall describe:

- the typical operation time or number of PROCEDURES;
- the typical service life of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE; and

- for a rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the behavior of the ME EQUIPMENT while the rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is charging.

EXAMPLE 1 Number of years after which a rechargeable battery needs to be replaced.

EXAMPLE 2 Number of discharge cycles after which a rechargeable battery needs to be replaced.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.3 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT description

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.5 of the general standard, the instructions for use for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR shall include easily understood diagrams, illustrations or photographs of the fully assembled and ready-to-operate ME EQUIPMENT including all controls, visual INFORMATION SIGNALS, and indicators provided with the ME EQUIPMENT (see 7.1).

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.4 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT start-up PROCEDURE

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.8 of the general standard, the instructions for use shall include:

- easily understood diagrams, illustrations, or photographs showing proper connection of the PATIENT to the ME EQUIPMENT, ACCESSORIES and other equipment (see 7.1); and
- the time from switching “ON” until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for NORMAL USE, if that time exceeds 15 s (see 15.4.4 of the general standard).
- the time required for the ME EQUIPMENT to warm from the minimum storage temperature between uses (4.2.2) until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for its INTENDED USE when the ambient temperature is 20 °C; and
- the time required for the ME EQUIPMENT to cool from the maximum storage temperature between uses (4.2.2) until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for its INTENDED USE when the ambient temperature is 20 °C.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.5 Additional requirements for operating instructions

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.9 of the general standard, the instructions for use for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR shall include a description of generally known conditions in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT that can unacceptably affect the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of the ME EQUIPMENT and the steps that can be taken by the LAY OPERATOR to identify and resolve these conditions, and shall include, where applicable, at least the following issues:

- the effects of lint, dust, light (including sunlight), etc.;
- a list of known devices or other sources that can potentially cause interference problems;

EXAMPLE 1 Heat from a fireplace or radiant heater.

EXAMPLE 2 Moisture from a nebuliser or steam kettle.

- the effects of degraded sensors and electrodes, or loosened electrodes, which can degrade performance or cause other problems;
- the effects caused by pets, pests or children.

The instructions for use shall explain the meaning of the IP classification marked on the ME EQUIPMENT and, if applicable, on any carrying case provided with the ME EQUIPMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use and by inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

7.4.6 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT messages

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.10 of the general standard, the instructions for use shall include a troubleshooting guide for use when there are indications of a ME EQUIPMENT malfunction during start-up or operation. The troubleshooting guide shall disclose the necessary steps to be taken in the event of each TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION.

NOTE See also IEC 60601-1-8.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.7 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection and sterilization

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.12 and 16.2 c), indent 3 of the general standard, for ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS, their parts or ACCESSORIES that are intended for other than single use and that can become contaminated through contact with the PATIENT or with body fluids or expired gases during INTENDED USE, the instructions for use shall:

either,

- indicate the frequency of cleaning, cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization, as appropriate, of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS, parts or ACCESSORIES used on the same PATIENT including methods for rinsing, drying, handling and storage between uses (see 8.1 and 8.2); and

EXAMPLE 1 Periodic cleaning and disinfection of a breathing system to prevent infection of a PATIENT during chronic care.

- if intended for multiple PATIENT use, indicate that it is necessary to clean and disinfect or clean and sterilize the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS, parts or ACCESSORIES between uses on different PATIENTS, including methods for rinsing, drying, handling and storage until re-use (see 8.1 and 8.2);

EXAMPLE 2 Cleaning and disinfection of a thermometer following use to prevent PATIENT cross infection.

or,

- indicate that the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES require professional hygienic maintenance prior to re-use and provide contact details for the source of these services (see 7.5.2).

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.8 Additional requirements for maintenance

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.13 of the general standard the instructions for use shall include:

- the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of the ME EQUIPMENT;
- the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT; and
- where the SHELF LIFE is less than the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE, the SHELF LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.9 Additional requirements for environmental protection

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.2.15 of the general standard, the instructions for use shall include, where applicable, a statement to the effect that the LAY RESPONSIBLE

ORGANIZATION must contact its local authorities to determine the proper method of disposal of potentially bio-hazardous parts and ACCESSORIES.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.4.10 Additional requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

For ME EQUIPMENT or an ME SYSTEM utilizing a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM the instructions for use shall include the recommended placement of the remote parts of the DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM to ensure that an OPERATOR can be notified at all times by an appropriate element of the DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM within its specified range.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the instructions for use.

7.5 Technical description

7.5.1 PERMANENTLY INSTALLED CLASS I ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 7.9.3.1 of the general standard to ensure that PERMANENTLY INSTALLED CLASS I ME EQUIPMENT is PROPERLY INSTALLED, the technical description shall include:

- a warning to the effect that the ME EQUIPMENT installation, including a correct PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION, must only be carried out by qualified SERVICE PERSONNEL;
- the specifications of the PERMANENTLY INSTALLED PROTECTIVE EARTH CONDUCTOR;
- a warning to verify the integrity of the external protective earthing system;
- a warning to connect and verify that the PROTECTIVE EARTH TERMINAL of the PERMANENTLY INSTALLED ME EQUIPMENT is connected to the external protective earthing system.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the technical description.

7.5.2 Additional requirements for professional hygienic maintenance

For ME EQUIPMENT or ACCESSORIES that require professional hygienic maintenance prior to re-use (see 7.4.7), the technical description shall include methods for cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization:

- before and after any type of service PROCEDURE;
- when the ME EQUIPMENT is transferred to another PATIENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the technical description.

8 Protection against excessive temperatures and other HAZARDS

8.1 * Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements of 11.6.6 of the general standard, the cleaning or cleaning and disinfection PROCESSES intended to be performed in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT by a LAY OPERATOR shall be capable of being performed by a LAY OPERATOR in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT (see 7.4.7). The USABILITY of each such PROCESS as it pertains to a LAY OPERATOR shall be investigated by the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.

8.2 * Additional requirements for sterilization of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements of 11.6.7 of the general standard, the cleaning and sterilization PROCESSES intended to be performed in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT by a LAY OPERATOR shall be capable of being performed by a LAY OPERATOR in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT (see 7.4.7). The USABILITY of each such PROCESS as it pertains to a LAY OPERATOR shall be investigated by the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.

8.3 Additional requirements for ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

8.3.1 * Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 11.6.5 of the general standard, TRANSIT-OPERABLE, HAND-HELD, and BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE after undergoing the test of IEC 60529:1989 and IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 for at least IP22. All other ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE after undergoing the test of IEC 60529:1989 and IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 for at least IP21. For PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is only intended to be used while inside a carrying case, this requirement may be met while the ME EQUIPMENT is inside the carrying case.

NOTE These levels of ENCLOSURE stresses are considered to be reflective of NORMAL USE in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by application of the tests of IEC 60529:1989 and IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 with the ME EQUIPMENT placed in the least favourable position of NORMAL USE. Confirm that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE are maintained.

8.3.2 * Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements for ENCLOSURES in 16.4 of the general standard, the ENCLOSURES of the non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of the ME SYSTEMS shall provide the degree of protection against harmful ingress of water or particulate matter equivalent to equipment complying with their respective IEC or ISO safety standards.

Compliance is checked by the tests of IEC 60529:1989 with the equipment placed in the least favorable position of NORMAL USE and by inspection.

Ingress tests that have already been performed on individual equipment of an ME SYSTEM according to relevant standards need not be repeated. See also 5.1 of the general standard.

8.4 Additional requirements for interruption of the power supply/SUPPLY MAINS to ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEM

In addition to the requirements of 11.8 and 16.8 of the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT shall maintain its ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE for a sufficient time or for a sufficient number of PROCEDURES, when loss or failure of the SUPPLY MAINS or near depletion of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE occurs. The time or number of PROCEDURES remaining shall allow alternative life-supporting methods to be employed.

NOTE 1 Requirements for loss or failure of SUPPLY MAINS for very short periods are found in IEC 60601-1-2.

An INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be utilized to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. Independent means may also be utilized to provide ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

EXAMPLE 1 Manually-driven pump or resuscitator.

The instructions for use shall disclose the time or number of PROCEDURES available following a loss or failure of the SUPPLY MAINS or near depletion of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE. The instructions for use shall describe the alternative life-supporting methods to be employed. The technical description shall describe methods that can be employed for longer periods.

NOTE 2 Electrical power supply failure includes failure of the SUPPLY MAINS or any near depletion of INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES.

If an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is not used, ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT shall be equipped with an ALARM SYSTEM that includes at least a MEDIUM PRIORITY ALARM CONDITION that indicates a power supply failure.

EXAMPLE 2 The SUPPLY MAINS voltage falls below the minimum value required for normal operation.

If an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is used, ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT shall be equipped with an automatic switchover to the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.

NOTE 3 A visual indication of this charging mode is required in 15.4.4 of the general standard.

If an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is used, ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT shall be equipped with an ALARM SYSTEM that includes at least a MEDIUM PRIORITY TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION that indicates that the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is nearing insufficient remaining power for ME EQUIPMENT operation. This TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION shall provide for a sufficient time or for a sufficient number of PROCEDURES for a LAY OPERATOR to act. A TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION of at least LOW PRIORITY shall remain active until the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is returned to a level that is above the ALARM LIMIT or until it is depleted. It shall not be possible to inactivate the visual ALARM SIGNAL of this TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION.

Compliance is checked by inspection, functional testing and inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

8.5 Additional requirements for an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE

8.5.1 * Indication of state

If the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is essential to maintain BASIC SAFETY or to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE or control the RISKS associated with the loss of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE, the ME EQUIPMENT shall be equipped with a means for the OPERATOR to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.

The state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be indicated as:

- a number of PROCEDURES remaining;
- the remaining operating time;
- the percentage of the remaining operating time or energy; or
- a "fuel" gauge.

The state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE may be indicated continuously or by OPERATOR action.

The instructions for use shall describe how to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.5.2 Accessibility of small INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES

Means other than labelling shall be provided to prevent the RISK of swallowing coin/button cells. A replaceable button cell shall require the use of a TOOL for replacement.

NOTE For the purposes of this standard, a button cell is considered to be an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE whose overall height is less than its diameter.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

9 Accuracy of controls and instruments and protection against hazardous outputs

In addition to the requirements of 12.2 of the general standard, when performing the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS, the RISKS associated with USABILITY in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT for OPERATOR PROFILES including a LAY OPERATOR shall include consideration of at least:

- changes of controls;
- unexpected movement;
- potential for misconnection;
- potential for improper operation, or unsafe use;
- potential for confusion as to current operational mode;
- change in the transfer of energy or substance;
- exposure to environmental conditions specified in this standard;
- exposure to biological materials; and
- small parts being inhaled or swallowed.

Particular emphasis shall be placed on the limited training of a LAY OPERATOR with respect to the ability to intervene and maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The MANUFACTURER shall include the least capable intended LAY OPERATOR or LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION in the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS.

EXAMPLES LAY OPERATORS with sensory, cognitive, physical limitations or comorbidities.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.

10 Construction of ME EQUIPMENT

10.1 * Additional requirements for mechanical strength

10.1.1 General requirements for mechanical strength

Additions to the mechanical strength applicability of Table 28 of the general standard are indicated in Table 1 and Table 2.

Table 1 – Mechanical strength test applicability, non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE

ME EQUIPMENT usage and type	Test from the general standard	Test from this standard
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and HAND-HELD	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and BODY-WORN	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and PORTABLE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.2)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and MOBILE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.2)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Rough handling (15.3.5)	-
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
FIXED or STATIONARY	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-

Table 2 – Mechanical strength test applicability, TRANSIT-OPERABLE

ME EQUIPMENT usage and type	Test from the general standard	Test from this standard
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and HAND-HELD	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.3 b))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and BODY-WORN	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Drop (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Shock (10.1.3 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and PORTABLE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	-	Free fall (10.1.3 d))
	-	Shock (10.1.3 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
TRANSIT-OPERABLE and MOBILE	Push (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	-	Free fall (10.1.3 d))
	-	Shock (10.1.3 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.3 c))
	Rough handling (15.3.5)	-
	Molding stress relief (15.3.6)	-
	-	-

10.1.2 * Requirements for mechanical strength for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 15.3 of the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, intended for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use shall have adequate mechanical strength when subjected to mechanical stress caused by NORMAL USE, including pushing, impact, dropping and rough handling. FIXED and STATIONARY ME EQUIPMENT are exempt from the requirements of this subclause.

After the following tests, ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. OPERATOR-resettable protective devices that can be reset without the use of a TOOL may be reset prior to the evaluation of BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

Compliance is checked by performing the following tests:

a) Shock test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-27:2008, using the following conditions:

NOTE 1 This represents Class 7M1 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

- *peak acceleration: 150 m/s² (15 g);*
- *duration: 11 ms;*
- *pulse shape: half-sine;*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total).*

b) Broad-band random vibration test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-64:2008, using the following conditions:

NOTE 2 This represents Class 7M1 and 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

- *acceleration amplitude:*
 - 10 Hz to 100 Hz: $1,0 (m/s^2)^2/Hz$;
 - 100 Hz to 200 Hz: – 3 db per octave;
 - 200 Hz to 2 000 Hz: $0,5 (m/s^2)^2/Hz$;
- *duration: 30 min per perpendicular axis (3 total).*

Confirm that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE are maintained.

10.1.3 * Requirements for mechanical strength for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 15.3 of the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, intended for TRANSIT-OPERABLE use, shall have adequate mechanical strength when subjected to mechanical stress caused by NORMAL USE, including pushing, impact, dropping, and rough handling and by rigorous conditions of PATIENT movement as well as transportation by trolleys, carts, road vehicles, trains, ships and aircraft.

After the following tests, ME EQUIPMENT shall maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

NOTE 1 The levels of mechanical stresses utilized in the test methods of this subclause are considered to be reflective of NORMAL USE for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

NOTE 2 ME EQUIPMENT tested and complying with the relevant requirement in this subclause is considered to comply with the corresponding requirement of 10.1.1.

Compliance is checked by performing the following tests:

- a) *For other than HAND-HELD ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, shock test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-27:2008, using the following conditions:*

NOTE 3 This represents Class 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

1) *test type: Type 1;*

- *peak acceleration: $150 m/s^2$ (15 g),*
- *duration: 11 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total);*

or

2) *test type: Type 2;*

- *peak acceleration: $300 m/s^2$ (30 g),*
- *duration: 6 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total).*

- b) *For HAND-HELD ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, shock test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-27:2008, using the following conditions:*

NOTE 4 This represents Class 7M3 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

1) *test type: Type 1;*

- *peak acceleration: $300 m/s^2$ (30 g),*
- *duration: 11 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total);*

or

2) *test type: Type 2;*

- *peak acceleration: 1 000 m/s² (100 g),*
- *duration: 6 ms,*
- *pulse shape: half-sine,*
- *number of shocks: 3 shocks per direction per axis (18 total).*

c) *For ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, broad-band random vibration test in accordance with IEC 60068-2-64:2008, using the following conditions:*

NOTE 5 This represents Class 7M1 and 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

- *acceleration amplitude:*
 - *10 Hz to 100 Hz: 1,0 (m/s²)²/Hz,*
 - *100 Hz to 200 Hz: -3 db per octave,*
 - *200 Hz to 2 000 Hz: 0,5 (m/s²)²/Hz,*
- *duration: 30 min per perpendicular axis (3 total).*

d) *For PORTABLE and MOBILE ME EQUIPMENT and its parts, including mounting ACCESSORIES, free fall to IEC 60068-2-31:2008, using PROCEDURE 1 and the following conditions:*

NOTE 6 This represents Class 7M2 as described in IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001.

- *fall height:*
 - *for mass ≤ 1 kg, 0,25 m,*
 - *for mass > 1 kg and ≤ 10 kg, 0,1 m,*
 - *for mass > 10 kg and ≤ 50 kg, 0,05 m,*
 - *for mass > 50 kg, 0,01 m,*
- *number of falls: 2 in each specified attitude.*

For PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is intended to be used only with a carrying case, that case may be applied to the equipment during this test.

Confirm that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE are maintained.

10.2 Additional requirements for actuating parts of controls of ME EQUIPMENT

In addition to the requirements of 15.4.6.2 of the general standard for ME EQUIPMENT that is intended for use by a LAY OPERATOR, controls that can affect BASIC SAFETY or ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE shall be protected from accidental or unauthorized changes or adjustments.

NOTE 1 Unauthorized changes or adjustments relate to modifications made without authorization of the intended OPERATOR or RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION.

EXAMPLE A child playing with the controls.

NOTE 2 Means to prevent unauthorized changes or adjustments include:

- access controlled by a TOOL;
- access controlled by RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION password and a technical description that is separate from the instructions for use;
- access controlled by individual OPERATOR password;
- access controlled by voice recognition; or
- access controlled by fingerprints.

NOTE 3 For a password to be considered secure, the owner of the password needs to be capable of changing the password.

NOTE 4 Multiple means of restriction can be needed, e.g., one for the RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION and one for each OPERATOR.

OPERATOR-adjustable controls used for calibration shall include a means to prevent unintentional changes from the intended position.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

11 * Protection against strangulation or asphyxiation

Means shall be provided to control the RISK of strangulation and asphyxiation of the PATIENT and others to an acceptable level.

EXAMPLE 1 By routing wires or tubing.

EXAMPLE 2 Using retention devices.

EXAMPLE 3 Providing the option of multiple length ACCESSORIES.

EXAMPLE 4 Not providing removable small parts for ME EQUIPMENT.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by inspection of the RISK MANAGEMENT FILE.

12 Additional requirements for ELECTROMAGNETIC EMISSIONS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

In addition to the requirements of 7.1.1 of IEC 60601-1-2:2014, ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT shall be classified as Class B according to CISPR 11:2009.

NOTE Use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT includes use 'in domestic establishments'.

13 Additional requirements for ALARM SYSTEMS of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

13.1 * Additional requirement for generation of ALARM SIGNALS

In addition to the requirements of 6.3.1 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 for the ALARM SYSTEM of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, unless they are connected to a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM intended for confirmed delivery of ALARM CONDITIONS (6.11.2.2.1 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012) that includes the generation of auditory ALARM SIGNALS as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012, each HIGH PRIORITY and MEDIUM PRIORITY ALARM CONDITION shall cause the generation of auditory or verbal ALARM SIGNALS as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

13.2 * Additional requirement for ALARM SIGNAL volume

In addition to the requirements of 6.3.3.3 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 for the ALARM SYSTEM of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT and intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, reducing the auditory ALARM SIGNAL volume below audible levels shall not be possible unless the ALARM SYSTEM is connected to a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM intended for confirmed delivery of ALARM CONDITIONS (6.11.2.2.1 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006 and IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012) that includes the generation of auditory ALARM SIGNALS as specified in IEC 60601-1-8:2006+IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012.

NOTE Guidance on suitable auditory ALARM SIGNAL volumes is found in the rationale for 6.3.3.2 of IEC 60601-1-8:2006.

Compliance is checked by functional testing.

Annex A (informative)

General guidance and rationale

A.1 General guidance

During the development of IEC 60601-1:2005, there was considerable discussion about the increasing use of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS outside professional healthcare facilities or without direct medical supervision.

Some of this equipment was seen as falling outside the formal scope of earlier editions of IEC 60601-1 and its collateral and particular standards because the definition of ME EQUIPMENT in IEC 60601-1:1988, included the phrase, "PATIENT under medical supervision".

A number of subsequent questions arose, including the following:

- Should the scope of the third edition of IEC 60601-1 be expanded to include ME EQUIPMENT intended for use without direct medical supervision?
- Should the new standard(s) include specific requirements for ME EQUIPMENT intended by its MANUFACTURER for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT?
- Should such requirements vary depending on the level of medical supervision or the environment in which the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be used?
- Does the introduction of RISK MANAGEMENT address these issues or is there still a need for additional technical requirements?

The question of what was originally meant by medical supervision remained unanswered but will still be relevant if the term is retained to differentiate proposed technical requirements for ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. Medical supervision could mean direct supervision by a doctor or it could include supervision by an allied health professional or a medical institution; it could be taken to mean real time supervision or it could include indirect supervision.

In reality, the level of medical supervision of ME EQUIPMENT used outside professional healthcare facilities and the environments in which it is used cover a wide range, as demonstrated by the following examples:

- HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT dialysis equipment is prescribed by a medical practitioner and is often installed and used under strict guidelines.
- Respiratory care equipment (bottles or oxygen concentrators, ventilators, nasal CPAP, etc.) is often prescribed by a medical practitioner but used without strict guidelines.
- Cardiac defibrillators of various kinds are used in all sorts of locations by doctors and nurses, ambulance paramedics, airline crews and even the general public.
- Many types of ME EQUIPMENT such as sphygmomanometers, clinical thermometers and transcutaneous nerve stimulators are purchased from pharmacy stores or over the internet without a medical prescription and used without any instructions or precautions other than those provided by the MANUFACTURER.

Developing tried-and-true answers to various issues associated with ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT should certainly reduce the need for individual MANUFACTURERS' RISK CONTROL measures and might improve the safety of SOME EQUIPMENT. However, the scope of the technical requirements needs to be carefully specified because the degree of medical supervision varies so widely. For example cardiac defibrillators can be used by:

- hospital doctors: some might see this as full medical supervision while a doctor such as a dermatologist might say that medical supervision implies use by or under the direction of an appropriately qualified specialist;
- non-hospital doctors: the same dermatologist might be less qualified than an ambulance paramedic to use a defibrillator;
- hospital nurses: ready access to medical staff in some professional healthcare facilities;
- paramedics: somewhat slower access to direct medical supervision. Large diversity in training between various emergency services, i.e. wide range in quality of indirect medical supervision;
- airline crews: automatic external defibrillator – probably used under policies and PROCEDURES developed by the airline's medical adviser. Some might say this is medical supervision;
- general public: automatic external defibrillator – possibly used according to short-form instructions printed on the unit or the cabinet or verbal instructions from the device itself.

Likewise, test requirements need to differentiate between a range of use environments such as:

- the controlled environment in (some) healthcare facilities.
- the possibly less well controlled environment of a PATIENT'S home in which installation and use of ME EQUIPMENT is administered by a healthcare facility.
- the even less well controlled environment of a PATIENT'S home in which ME EQUIPMENT that has been prescribed by a medical practitioner is used without any direct supervision.
- the uncontrolled environment in which some ME EQUIPMENT purchased without a prescription is used.

One early step in addressing these issues was made when the scope of IEC 60601-1:2005 was extended by removing "under medical supervision" from the definition of ME EQUIPMENT. However there are only oblique references to the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT in IEC 60601-1:2005:

- One of the notes to the definition of RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION states that in "home use applications" the PATIENT, OPERATOR and RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION can be one and the same person.
- The rationale for the definition of OPERATOR states that in the "home-care environment" this could be either the PATIENT or a LAY OPERATOR assisting the PATIENT.
- The rationale for 14.13 of the general standard (PEMS intended to be incorporated into an IT-network) states that many hospitals operate ME EQUIPMENT in a networked environment within the hospital, between hospitals and from home.

This collateral standard was developed with these considerations in mind. It is intended to bridge the gap between the technical requirements in IEC 60601-1:2005 and those needed for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended by their MANUFACTURERS to be used in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

This second edition of IEC 60601-1-11 has been harmonized with IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012.

A.2 Rationale for particular clauses and subclauses

The following are rationales for specific clauses and subclauses in this collateral standard, with clause and subclause numbers parallel to those in the body of the document.

Subclause 1.1 – Scope

The definition of ME EQUIPMENT in IEC 60601-1:2005 contains very specific criteria that can be used to determine if a specific piece of equipment is MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT. That definition is repeated below.

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:

electrical equipment having an APPLIED PART or transferring energy to or from the PATIENT or detecting such energy transfer to or from the PATIENT and which is:

- a) provided with not more than one connection to a particular SUPPLY MAINS; and
- b) intended by its MANUFACTURER to be used:
 - 1) in the diagnosis, treatment, or monitoring of a PATIENT; or
 - 2) for compensation or alleviation of disease, injury or disability.

In order to determine if equipment is ME EQUIPMENT, one needs to demonstrate that:

- the ME EQUIPMENT has an APPLIED PART; or
- the ME EQUIPMENT transfers energy to or from the PATIENT; or
- the ME EQUIPMENT detects the energy transfer to or from the PATIENT.

If the equipment meets this criterion, then one needs to determine whether or not the MANUFACTURER of the equipment intends that:

- the ME EQUIPMENT be used for diagnosis, treatment, or monitoring of a PATIENT; or
- the ME EQUIPMENT be used for compensation or alleviation of disease, injury or disability.

Excluded from the scope are aids without an APPLIED PART, and where according to the INTENDED USE, the safety is fully covered by IEC 60950-1 [8], IEC 60065 [2] or IEC 60335-1 [3]. Examples of such equipment are the following:

- a reading aid with a digital camera and a monitor for enlargement of text for persons with impaired vision could be covered by IEC 60065 and related EMC standards;
- a flashing light to indicate that the phone is ringing for persons with impaired hearing could be covered by IEC 60065 and related EMC standards;
- an amplifier for connection to radio or TV sets with wireless transmission to a BODY-WORN hearing aid could be covered by IEC 60065 and related EMC standards; and
- a can opener for persons with impaired hand/finger motion ability is better covered by IEC 60335-1 and related part-2 and EMC standards.

These types of products are in fact home electronics or household appliances rather than medical equipment, even though they might fall within the regulatory definition of a medical device in some countries. Hence, these products should comply with the relevant standard for such products e.g. IEC 60950-1 for the reading aid, IEC 60065 for the TV sound amplifier and IEC 60335-1 for the can opener. Persons handling such aids are not PATIENTS in the concept of IEC 60601-1 i.e. these persons are not more sensitive/vulnerable than people in general. The "PATIENT" operates these products, but they have in many cases no APPLIED PART.

There is no logical reason to require that a TV sound amplifier or a can opener for home use comply with IEC 60601-1 or with IEC 60601-1-2. Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) is not more critical for these products than for other generic products and there are no 'medical' APPLIED PARTS.

For the purposes of this standard, the EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES ENVIRONMENT is treated as a professional healthcare facility and is covered by IEC 60601-1-12. The goal of emergency medical services is to either provide treatment to those in need of urgent medical care, with the goal of satisfactorily treating the malady, or arranging for timely removal of the

PATIENT to the next point of definitive care. Emergency medical services are known by various names in different countries and regions.

Definition 3.2 – LAY

This term was introduced as an adjective into this collateral standard to emphasize the difference between the characteristics of the OPERATOR and the RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION present in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT versus the environment of the professional healthcare facility. It was not introduced to remove or modify requirements from the general standard.

An important difference is the requirement for the USABILITY of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM, including its labeling, to address the intended OPERATOR who is presumed to not be a professional, medically trained individual or an expert in the operating principles and medical use of the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM.

Additionally, the RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION, which can include the PATIENT or OPERATOR in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, most likely will not have the background to properly care for and maintain the ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM in the same way a professional healthcare facility is expected to do by its regulators and accrediting bodies. The results of the USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS for ME EQUIPMENT or an ME SYSTEM intended for the LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION can lead the MANUFACTURER to develop a product that is easier to maintain than when the only intended RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION is a professional healthcare facility and its personnel.

Subclause 4.1 – Additional requirements for SUPPLY MAINS for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

Most household appliance standards, such as IEC 60950-1 [8], IEC 60335-1 [3] and IEC 60065 [2] have a $\pm 10\%$ SUPPLY MAINS variation for household equipment. The -15% to $+10\%$ SUPPLY MAINS variation was considered more appropriate for ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT given the more critical need for maintaining ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. The -15% low line SUPPLY MAINS variation is based on the -10% low line considered normal, and the additional -4% drop allowed for wiring in the electrical installations of buildings [1] [4] plus another 1% for margin.

The -20% SUPPLY MAINS variation for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT allows operation during 'brown-out' conditions and permits the use of inexpensive generators for emergency backup. This is consistent with requirements in existing standards for ventilators intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT for ventilator-dependent PATIENTS [11].

For DC SUPPLY MAINS, the requirements support operation from lead-acid batteries and automobiles. A typical 12 V lead-acid battery has an open circuit voltage of approximately $12,65\text{ V}$ when fully charged. This voltage drops to approximately $12,06\text{ V}$ when 25% charged. Furthermore while cranking the engine, automotive lead-acid batteries are RATED for their ampacity while maintaining $7,2\text{ V}$. MANUFACTURERS need to consider whether or not their equipment needs to operate under this condition. While the engine is running, the battery charging system typically maintains the DC voltage between $12,8\text{ V}$ and $14,8\text{ V}$. [13] [14]

Subclause 4.2 – Environmental conditions for ME EQUIPMENT

Several test sequences of this standard combine elevated temperature and elevated relative humidity (unless indicated and marked otherwise). This combination is a severe condition that does not occur in actual use environments. For example MIL-HDBK-310 [26], subclause 5.1.3.1 shows a maximum world-wide absolute humidity corresponding to a dew point of 34°C . When air at the extreme 34°C and 93% relative humidity is warmed to 70°C , the relative humidity will drop to a lower value of about 16% because the vapour pressure at this temperature is 312 hPa [25]. This is why the committee has chosen to limit the water vapour

partial pressure to 50 hPa. This needs to be considered when setting the control for relative humidity during the tests.

The partial pressure of a gas or vapour is the pressure that this gas would assume when no other gases were present in the given volume, i.e. all other gases being removed. So the partial pressure of oxygen in dry air at a pressure of 1 013 hPa is approximately equal to 210 hPa.

The saturation vapour pressure P_s of a liquid is the partial pressure of the vapour of that liquid in thermal equilibrium with its liquid. This saturation vapour pressure depends strongly on temperature. Saturation vapour pressure is low at low temperatures and reaches atmospheric pressure at the boiling temperature. A mathematical description of this temperature dependence was first developed by B. Clapeyron and later on derived by R. Clausius from the theory of thermodynamics.

$$P_s = K_1 \times e^{-K_2/T} \quad (\text{A.1})$$

where

T = the absolute temperature

K_1 and K_2 = are constants related boiling point and heat of evaporation

This can be reorganized as:

$$P_s = 1013 \text{ hPa} \times e^{\frac{K_2 \times (T_b - T)}{T_b \times T}} \quad (\text{A.2})$$

where

K_2 = $\Delta H/R$

ΔH = heat of evaporation

R = universal gas constant

T = the absolute temperature

T_b = the absolute boiling temperature

This equation is based on assumptions that only are valid over a limited temperature range. The most important assumption is that the heat of evaporation is temperature independent, which is not exactly the case. Therefore other formulas have been developed — either based on a more detailed theory taking into account what has been neglected before or on experimental data — that cover a larger temperature range. However, within the limited temperature range of 10 °C to 80 °C the original and simple Clausius-Clapeyron-equation can be used, albeit with slightly different constants.

Figure A.1 shows the saturation water vapour pressure as a function of temperature.

The relative humidity RH is given as the ratio of the actual partial pressure of the water vapour and the saturation vapour pressure.

$$RH = P_v/P_s \quad (\text{A.3})$$

where

P_v = actual partial pressure of the water vapour

P_s = saturation vapour pressure

When one knows the actual temperature and thereby P_s , RH can be calculated from P_v and vice versa.

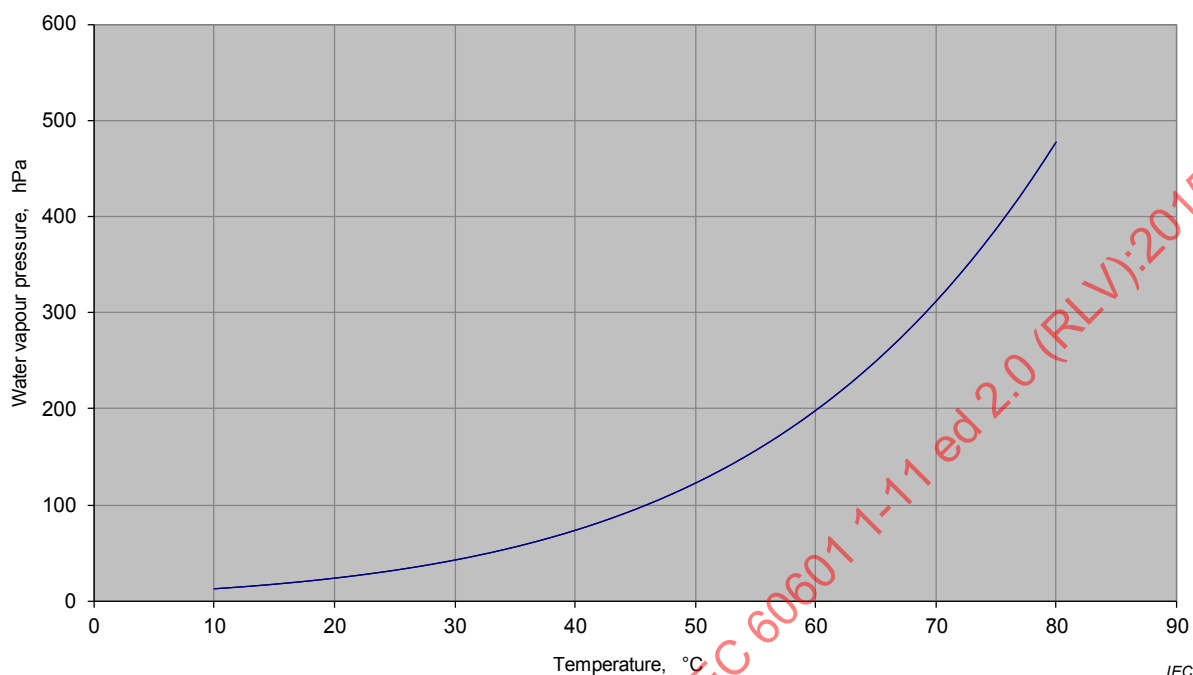


Figure A.1 – Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature

Subclause 4.2.2 – Environmental conditions of transport and storage between uses

These environmental ranges defined in IEC TR 60721-4-7 [7] level 7K3 are not uncommon in storage locations where the ME EQUIPMENT might be stored or transported between uses in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. Outdoor temperatures and particularly temperatures found in automobiles during transport and storage can easily reach these extremes. To prevent damage to the ME EQUIPMENT, the ME EQUIPMENT either needs to be able to survive these conditions or the OPERATOR needs to be continually reminded by the required marking to protect the ME EQUIPMENT from these conditions. Consideration should be given to ranges greater than those required by this standard, such as either those covered by IEC TR 60721-4-7, for example level 7K4, or alternatively defined through evaluation of intended environments of use by the MANUFACTURER.

IEC TR 60721-4-7 was chosen since it is designed to provide specific test limits to match the intended environments of use expected by various use cases in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

Marking of the range of environmental transport and storage conditions between uses on the ME EQUIPMENT can be impossible because of the very small size of the ME EQUIPMENT, a part or ACCESSORY, or because such markings would interfere with the INTENDED USE of the ME EQUIPMENT, part or ACCESSORY.

To aid MANUFACTURERS of small ME EQUIPMENT in reducing test time, two options for the soak period are provided. The general requirement is to soak the ME EQUIPMENT at a set of conditions for 24 h. The alternative is to permit the MANUFACTURER to measure the internal temperature of the ME EQUIPMENT at an appropriate location and then terminate the soak after THERMAL STABILITY has been reached for a period of 2 h.

Table A.1 – Saturation water vapour pressure as function of temperature

Temperature °C	Saturation water vapour pressure P_s hPa	Equivalent relative humidity at an actual partial pressure of the water vapour of 50hPa %
10	12,28	-
12	14,03	-
14	15,99	-
16	18,19	-
18	20,64	-
20	23,39	-
22	26,45	-
24	29,85	-
26	33,63	-
28	37,82	-
30	42,46	-
32	47,58	-
34	53,23	94
36	59,45	84
38	66,30	75
40	73,81	68
42	82,05	61
44	91,08	55
46	100,94	50
48	111,71	45
50	123,44	41
52	136,23	37
54	150,12	33
56	165,22	30
58	181,59	28
60	199,32	25
62	218,51	23
64	239,25	21
66	261,63	19
68	285,76	17
70	311,76	16
72	339,72	15
74	369,78	14
76	402,05	12
78	436,65	11
80	473,73	11

Subclause 4.2.3 – Environmental operating conditions

These environmental ranges are commonly found in areas where ME EQUIPMENT is operated in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

This subclause specifies a set of environmental operating conditions (temperature, relative humidity, atmospheric pressure) under which ME EQUIPMENT is required to maintain its BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. These conditions are wider than those that had been required because the environmental conditions in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are typically wider or less controlled than those of a professional healthcare facility. To maintain its BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE, the ME EQUIPMENT either needs to be able to function under the conditions specified in this subclause or the OPERATOR needs to be continually reminded to operate the ME EQUIPMENT within the more restricted range of conditions marked on the ME EQUIPMENT during use.

In order to evaluate the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of the ME EQUIPMENT, PATIENT simulation might be needed to approximate a worst-case PATIENT use scenario so that the test can be performed without connecting the ME EQUIPMENT to a PATIENT. The MANUFACTURER will need to determine which functionality of the ME EQUIPMENT can appropriately be used for evaluation of its BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. Some ME EQUIPMENT needs to be sequentially activated and can require some modification in order to complete these tests. MANUFACTURERS are reminded that subclause 5.4 a) of the general standard requires testing to be performed "under the least favorable working conditions ... that are identified during the RISK ANALYSIS". This means that these tests also need to be performed at any intermediate point that is suspected or known to be less favorable than those explicitly specified in this subclause.

Marking of the range of environmental operating conditions of use on the ME EQUIPMENT can be impossible because of the very small size of the ME EQUIPMENT, a part or ACCESSORY, or because such markings would interfere with the INTENDED USE of the ME EQUIPMENT, part or ACCESSORY.

To aid MANUFACTURERS of small ME EQUIPMENT in reducing test time, two options for the soak period are provided. The general requirement is to soak the ME EQUIPMENT at a set of conditions for 24 h. The alternative is to permit the MANUFACTURER to measure the internal temperature of the ME EQUIPMENT at an appropriate location and then terminate the soak after THERMAL STABILITY has been reached for a period of 2 h.

Subclause 4.2.3.2 – Environmental shock to TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT is likely to see rapid changes in environmental temperature and humidity while operating – for example, when the PATIENT moves from the cold, dry conditions found outdoors in the winter into the relatively warm, moist conditions inside a home or other heated structure. The TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT has to continue to provide BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE during that transition even if there is condensation on or in the ME EQUIPMENT. TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT is also likely to see movement from relatively warm and moist conditions into cooler, dryer conditions.

Moving from cold and dry conditions to warmer and moister conditions, might result in some safety and performance difficulties due to wetness caused by condensation. Some safety and performance difficulties can include problems with moving parts and failure of electronics due to shorting of functional insulation. Requirements for CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES in the general standard are based on a pollution degree 2 environment. The typical HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is expected to be a pollution degree 2 environment, i.e. an environment with dust, which when dry is non-conductive, but can be moist, and when moist is considered conductive. The CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES for such pollution degree 2 environments are established taking into account temporary condensation periods. Subclause 8.9 of the general standard establishes suitable CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES for MEANS OF OPERATOR PROTECTION (MOOP), and more conservative distances

for MEANS OF PATIENT PROTECTION (MOPP). Similarly concerns about integrity of solid insulation are considered minimal because of the required humidity conditioning testing required by the general standard.

Moving from warm and moist conditions to cooler, dryer conditions might result in some safety and performance difficulties (e.g. degradation or loss) due to contraction and increased brittleness of materials. Some safety and performance difficulties can include sticking valves, belts slipping or o-rings leaking. Solid insulation between conductive parts has more severe 30-day thermal cycling testing in 8.9.3 of the general standard, making concerns in this area minimal.

The committee considers that TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is designed to operate within the standard operating environmental conditions given in 4.2.3 is unlikely to have difficulty with environmental shock due to rapid temperature and humidity changes within that range. If the ME EQUIPMENT design incorporates non-standard technologies or materials, the MANUFACTURER can decide that additional testing is prudent, but it is not required by this standard.

For TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT that is RATED for more extreme environmental conditions than those specified in 4.2.3, this standard requires environmental shock testing.

When environmental shock testing is conducted, the MANUFACTURER needs to consider compliance criteria for BASIC SAFETY that include such issues, inter alia:

- as degradation or loss of seals (which could be a RISK CONTROL measure for O₂ separation, or providing ingress protection),
- degradation or loss of protective covers (which could be a RISK CONTROL measure for casualty HAZARDS, or providing fire containment).

The concerns about condensation degrading or shorting CREEPAGE DISTANCES and AIR CLEARANCES are minimal because the distances specified in the general standard are appropriate for their intended pollution degree. Similarly concerns about safety and the integrity of solid insulation are considered minimal because of required humidity testing and, where appropriate, 30-day thermal cycling testing required in the general standard. The committee considers the requirements in the general standard to be suitable RISK CONTROL measures to deal with environment shock and conducting LEAKAGE CURRENT and dielectric strength testing are considered unnecessary after these tests.

The ME EQUIPMENT is required to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE during and following these tests.

For some ME EQUIPMENT, moving between atmospheric pressure extremes might need to be considered. This subclause does not require a test or provide a protocol for this possibility. Such ME EQUIPMENT where concerns about environmental atmospheric pressure shock might need investigating includes air handling systems, such as ventilators and associated ACCESSORIES. However, most ME EQUIPMENT is unlikely to be affected by rapid pressure changes.

Clause 5 – General requirements for testing ME EQUIPMENT

For purposes of electrical safety, the identification of ACCESSIBLE PARTS using the small test probe defined in Figure 13 of IEC 61032:1997 [9] is appropriate for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT because this equipment is likely to be around small children who are unsupervised. However, for purposes of ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) tests, the standard test finger described in Figure 6 of the general standard is deemed adequate.

Clause 6 – Classification of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

Many countries have a standard or code covering electrical installations in buildings that is derived from the IEC or CENELEC standards and is incorporated into building regulations, health and safety regulations or is otherwise legally enforceable. The problem is that these standards are not retrospective, so many existing buildings and their occupants do not benefit from this level of safety. As a result, the safety means, and in particular the PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION, in older buildings is questionable.

While the standards of safety in most areas of life are constantly improving, the safety of domestic electrical installations in existing buildings has not kept pace. People expect to be at their safest when in their own homes and tend not to be aware of the RISKS that face them there.

For example, the current completion rate for newly built dwellings implies that the average lifetime of a European dwelling is 200 years and the majority (60%) of European housing stock is already over 30 years old [16]. A significant majority of domestic electrical installations in Europe do not meet current electrical codes. The high average age of homes coupled with an intense electricity-based lifestyle and increasing safety standards are factors that require a regular, periodic renovation of electrical installations. Presently, this is not the case. The renovation rate for electrical installations in Europe is low. The above figures are based on the European situation. The experts from the joint working group that prepared this standard were of the opinion that the average situation with regard to the safety of the electrical installation in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is not significantly better in other parts of the world, and might be even worse. In some countries, for example Japan and Denmark, a connection for protective earth in homes is not usually available.

The lack of adequate safety measures can have serious consequences. Electrical defects are a common cause of fire. Research has shown that fires caused by electrical defects result in more damage and personal injuries than average fires. Poorly maintained electrical equipment can also cause injuries through electric shock, especially if the safety means of the protective earth is not present or not functioning. These electrical defects can also cause ME EQUIPMENT to malfunction with serious consequences for the people involved and specifically for the PATIENT who might not be able to respond to these defects, e.g. by reflex, which is a major difference compared to other electrical equipment used by healthy persons in the household.

The committee concluded that it is unacceptable to base the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT on a PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION considering the facts that:

- it can be reasonably foreseen that ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT will quite often be used with electrical installations that lack effective PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTIONS;
- the typical LAY OPERATOR will not be able to determine the status/safety of the electrical installation; and
- much of the ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT will be installed and used without professional support (i.e. the support of a professional home care provider).

Consequently the RISK CONTROL measures for protection against electrical shock for ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE environment should not depend on a PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION (i.e. be of CLASS I construction). Similarly, the designer of the ME EQUIPMENT should not depend on the presence of a FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION to earth in order to comply with EMC requirements or to maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

An exception is made for ME EQUIPMENT that is PERMANENTLY INSTALLED since such equipment is required to be electrically connected to the SUPPLY MAINS by means of a permanent connection that can only be detached by the use of a TOOL. When that connection is made, which is normally performed by SERVICE PERSONNEL (e.g. a skilled electrical contractor), the

adequacy of the PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION can be verified. There are specific disclosure requirements included in 7.5.1 to ensure specifically that the appropriate information is available for this important connection.

The committee concluded that excluding TYPE B APPLIED PARTS and allowing only F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS provided practical RISK CONTROL for the following reasonably foreseeable HAZARDOUS SITUATIONS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT:

- a) It was felt that ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT would likely have NETWORK/DATA COUPLING ports for ACCESSORIES, including connections to the internet, a telecommunication network, a printer, etc. While the instructions for use will specify that only appropriate safety compliant equipment is to be connected to such ports, it is reasonably foreseeable that some ACCESSORIES will not have appropriate TOUCH CURRENT limits. An F-TYPE APPLIED PART insulation barrier separates the APPLIED PART from the equipment chassis by insulation equivalent to a data separation barrier on user SIP/SOP ACCESSORY ports.
- b) The total PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT from APPLIED PARTS contacting an earthed PATIENT will increase as the number of APPLIED PARTS increases. In a professional healthcare facility this is supervised by healthcare professionals. In the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT this level of supervision is likely missing. An F-TYPE APPLIED PART insulation barrier separates the APPLIED PART from earth, and therefore the total PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT from multiple F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS to earth is greatly reduced by design.

The exclusion of TYPE B APPLIED PARTS is felt to be the best practical mitigation strategy for the above HAZARDOUS SITUATIONS. The committee acknowledges that depending on the specific ME EQUIPMENT type, some or all of the RISKS associated with these HAZARDOUS SITUATIONS could be controlled by alternative means. For example, some ME EQUIPMENT does not have NETWORK/DATA COUPLING ports, or if they do, have a suitable data separation barrier. Some ME EQUIPMENT is unlikely to be used while simultaneously contacting other APPLIED PARTS, such as a heating blanket. INTERNALLY POWERED products will have negligible PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT.

The exception for ME EQUIPMENT that is PERMANENTLY INSTALLED applies since such equipment is required to be reliably electrically connected to the SUPPLY MAINS by means of a permanent connection that can only be detached by the use of a TOOL. Such ME EQUIPMENT is allowed to have a TYPE B APPLIED PART. For some ME EQUIPMENT with a TYPE B APPLIED PART, the protective earth provides a single means of protection, e.g. haemodialysis equipment. Haemodialysis equipment also represents a class of ME EQUIPMENT where providing an F-TYPE APPLIED PART can be impractical. As such equipment is installed by SERVICE PERSONNEL, one can assume that it has a reliable protective earth. As a result, a TYPE B APPLIED PART is acceptable for PERMANENTLY INSTALLED ME EQUIPMENT.

The MANUFACTURER of PERMANENTLY INSTALLED ME EQUIPMENT should still consider the HAZARDS noted for cord-connected ME EQUIPMENT, which the committee feels are best mitigated by allowing only F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS.

Subclause 7.1 – USABILITY of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

As required by the general standard and its USABILITY collateral standard, IEC 60601-1-6:2010 and IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013, ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT should focus on the characteristics of the intended LAY OPERATOR to make the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS most effective for them. A major shortcoming of many ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS is that they have not been written with the target LAY OPERATORS in mind. Consequently, LAY OPERATORS have often misunderstood or been unable to comprehend the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS.

Because of the wide variation expected in the education and competency of LAY OPERATORS, the committee considers a reading comprehension comparable to the eighth year of education to be reasonable. This is consistent with guidance from the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) [22] [23] [24]. These references are suggested as useful guidance documents for

developing high quality ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS for LAY OPERATORS of ME EQUIPMENT for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

User research and the ongoing USABILITY ENGINEERING PROCESS involve the systematic collection of data from members of the intended user group on various characteristics of the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS. User research of ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS should focus on one or more of the following areas: LAY OPERATOR comprehension, LAY OPERATOR performance, acceptability, and credibility. User research can identify specific strengths and weaknesses of ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS. The findings from user research can improve ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS before the ME EQUIPMENT is brought to market. User research methods include focus group interviews, in-depth individual interviews, questionnaires, and readability testing. The use of clear, simple, precise graphics can help any user understand instructions.

Software TOOLS available to estimate the grade level readability of text include:

- Flesch-Kincaid Grade Level – part of standard Microsoft Word word processing program;
- SMOG (Simple Measure of Gobbledygook) Readability Index – commonly used by the U.S. government to measure readability;
- Fry Readability Graph.

These TOOLS measure readability based upon words per sentence and syllables per word.

Most often, some combination of these methods is used to develop a USABILITY SPECIFICATION for the most effective ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS possible. The MANUFACTURER VERIFIES that the final ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS fulfill the USABILITY SPECIFICATION. VALIDATION includes testing with representative LAY OPERATORS.

The committee reminds designers of ME EQUIPMENT for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT that ideally a RISK CONTROL measure will be intrinsic to the design, and not rely on the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENT, which particularly in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, can be misunderstood and is likely to be lost.

Subclause 7.2 – Additional requirements for marking of IP classification

Subclause 8.3.1 requires a minimum IP classification for ME EQUIPMENT. IEC 60529 offers the MANUFACTURER a common marking for conveying to an OPERATOR the IP classification. Parties other than LAY persons (such as homecare providers, clinicians or knowledgeable LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATIONS) can be involved in selecting equipment for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT. Conveying IP classification is necessary for these parties and permits choosing the appropriate equipment for a specific application. Such marking is also consistent with the requirements for ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the professional healthcare facility.

Subclause 7.4.2 – Additional requirements for an electrical power source

The intent of this subclause is to give the OPERATOR a reasonable expectation of how long the ME EQUIPMENT will operate. This permits the OPERATOR to know how many extra batteries to have available or how long the ME EQUIPMENT will last before it needs replacing.

ME EQUIPMENT intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT that utilizes an INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, that is not periodically or automatically maintained, can usually be powered with batteries that are readily available to the general public. For example, a sphygmomanometer designed for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT can be powered by a primary type battery using a Zinc-Carbon or an Alkaline type cell, or by a secondary (rechargeable) type of battery using a Nickel-Metal Hydride type cell. The characteristics for these batteries differ significantly from cell type to cell type as well as within one cell type from one battery MANUFACTURER to another. The capacities (i.e. operation time or number of PROCEDURES), SHELF LIFE (for primary types) and for rechargeable types, how many times the

battery can be charged and discharged before it becomes unusable (good cycle life) are significantly different from one cell type to another.

Because many INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES use electrochemical battery technologies, these disclosures are likely to be based on a combination of measurements, specifications and calculations, all of which are based on a set of typical operating conditions for the specified cell type. The MANUFACTURER should consider the technical characteristics of a particular battery type in reference to the NORMAL USE of the ME EQUIPMENT, as well as usage pattern information, temperature during use, electrical load conditions, etc., in developing the disclosure required in this subclause.

As there are several possibilities for INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES, the required disclosures in the instructions for use should be determined under one of the following conditions:

- for a non-rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE,
 - a) for a non-replaceable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the operation time or number of PROCEDURES and the typical service life is determined using a new and unused INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE; or
 - b) for a replaceable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the operation time or number of PROCEDURES is determined using an unused INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, as specified in the instructions for use, that is within the SHELF LIFE of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE; or
- NOTE Consideration should also be given to whether or not a separate disclosure is needed for conditions where the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is at the end of its SHELF LIFE.
- for a rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, the operation time or number of PROCEDURES of the specified rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE when installed in the ME EQUIPMENT is determined for both:
 - c) a new and fully charged INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, and
 - d) a fully charged INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE at the specified point of replacement of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE or ME EQUIPMENT.

Subclause 7.4.7 – Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection and sterilization

The disclosure is required to reduce the RISK of infection to acceptable levels. See rationale to 8.1.

Subclause 8.1 – Additional requirements for cleaning, disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS, and

Subclause 8.2 – Additional requirements for sterilization of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES should not be operated or used if their condition could compromise the health or safety of the PATIENT using them or the employees or third parties supplying them. Among other reasons, this means that ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES cannot be operated or used if there is a potential RISK of the PATIENT becoming infected from the ME EQUIPMENT, a ME SYSTEM or an ACCESSORY.

ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES used in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT require an appropriate level of disinfection, depending on their use, but rarely need to be sterile. Methods used for the cleaning and disinfection of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES need to reduce/eliminate the RISK of infecting a PATIENT with microorganisms while also reducing the RISK to the OPERATOR who performs the cleaning and disinfection PROCESS. The methods also need to be feasible for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT in which they are intended to be performed.

All ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES are a potential source of infection in humans. Any ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY that has been used by a PATIENT is potentially contaminated with reproductive human pathogenic microorganisms until proven otherwise. Appropriate PROCEDURES for handling and PROCESSING are essential to protect the next person handling, or the next PATIENT using, the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORY. Hence ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES that have been used need PROCESSING, following the MANUFACTURER'S instructions, prior to reuse by another PATIENT.

The basic requirements for such PROCESSING of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES are usually determined by:

- the potential degree of contamination of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORY; and
- the RISK of infecting another PATIENT or third party or re-infecting a PATIENT resulting from reuse of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY and the type of application of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY.

Reusable ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS and ACCESSORIES that are used in professional healthcare facilities are routinely intended for sequential use with multiple PATIENTS, i.e. moved from one sick PATIENT to another sick PATIENT. This practice creates opportunities for cross contamination by potentially virulent microorganisms. In order to prevent infection caused by cross contamination, professional healthcare facilities vigorously clean and sterilize reusable ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES using expensive, elaborate equipment and/or toxic chemicals.

The situation is quite different for ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT:

- Reusable ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES for chronic care are not routinely moved from PATIENT to PATIENT so the RISK of cross contamination is low.
- PATIENTS using ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS are not always sick and usually not infected with virulent microorganisms.
- It is generally not feasible to purchase and operate elaborate sterilization systems and it is not safe to use toxic chemicals in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are often used repeatedly on the same PATIENT. ACCESSORIES and components that would typically be either subject to cleaning and high-level disinfection or cleaning and sterilization in the professional healthcare facility should be cleaned and disinfected in a manner that reduces the RISK of infection from common, household- and PATIENT-resident microorganisms.

When selecting and evaluating the cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization methods the MANUFACTURER has to consider:

- the amount and type of microorganisms expected to be on the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY used;
- the RISK for the microorganisms to be transmitted; and
- the resistance of the microorganisms to the cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization methods intended to be used.

The RISKS posed by such PROCESSING of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or ACCESSORIES are determined by the following factors:

- a) undesired effects, which can result from:
 - the previous use of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY,
 - the previous cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization PROCEDURES, and
 - transportation and storage;
- b) the RISKS from the type of subsequent uses, such as:

- residues from the previous use (such as secretions and other bodily components or drugs);
- residues from the previous cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization PROCEDURES (such as cleaning agents, disinfectants and other substances, including their reaction products);
- changes of physical, chemical or functional properties of the ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY; and
- changes in the condition of the material (such as accelerated wear and tear, embrittlement and changed surface conditions, connectors and adhesive joints);

c) the RISK of transmission of any microorganisms.

When considering the suitability and feasibility of the cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization PROCEDURE for ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEM or ACCESSORY within the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, the MANUFACTURER should consider the following:

- the RISKS involved in the PROCESS;
- the cost effectiveness of the PROCESS;
- the practicability of the PROCESS;
- the availability of the cleaning equipment and the cleaning agents specified in the PROCESS;
- the efficiency of the PROCESS;
- the reproducibility of the PROCESS;
- the quality management requirements of the PROCESS; and
- the environmental impact of the PROCESS and the disposal of any supplies (e.g. cleaning agents) utilized.

When in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT or an ME SYSTEM is intended to be used on a different PATIENT, it is appropriate to use methods of cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization that are used in the professional healthcare facility. This might include the need for specific TOOLS or equipment and specific knowledge or training of the persons involved in these PROCEDURES which are usually not available in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, i.e. this might include the need to involve professional organizations (e.g. hospitals, homecare providers or MANUFACTURERS) in that PROCESS.

Subclause 8.3.1 – Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME EQUIPMENT

ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT can face many situations which ME EQUIPMENT intended for use only in the professional healthcare facilities is not likely to encounter due to environmental controls and OPERATOR training in professional healthcare facilities.

Therefore, as a minimum requirement, ENCLOSURES of ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are required to provide protection against ingress of an object of Ø 12,5 mm (an adult's finger). This is in addition to the requirement in Clause 5 for determining ACCESSIBLE PARTS utilizing Ø 5,6 mm (equivalent to a child's finger). All HAND-HELD and BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT are required to be protected against the ingress of vertically falling water drops with the ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE tilted at 15° (IPX2). MOBILE and PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT in non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use are to be protected against the ingress of vertically falling water drops with the ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE positioned on a turntable (IPX1). These requirements are summarized in Table A.2.

Table A.2 – Summary by use of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE ingress of water and particulate matter requirements

	Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use				TRANSIT-OPERABLE use			
	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN
IEC 60529 Ingress protection	IP21	IP21	IP22	IP22	IP22	IP22	IP22	IP22

TRANSIT-OPERABLE includes use outdoors, and has a potentially higher probability of exposure to dust, dirt and rain, even for MOBILE and PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT. This is especially true for those mounted on wheelchairs and those that are ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT. It is difficult to predict when a PATIENT might use ME EQUIPMENT outdoors, but it is reasonably foreseeable that such use will occur. It is also reasonably foreseeable that PATIENTS will not be able to keep their ME EQUIPMENT dry. Under these conditions, ME EQUIPMENT is expected to maintain BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

When a carrying case is used during IP testing, it should be the same case that is used during mechanical strength testing.

Subclause 8.3.2 – Ingress of water or particulate matter into ME SYSTEMS

As with the analysis in the rationale to Clause 6, the committee concluded that most ME SYSTEMS comprise ME EQUIPMENT in combination with ACCESSORIES such as connections to the internet, a telecommunication network, a printer, etc. Consistent with the philosophy of the general standard, this standard relies on the requirements for resistance to ingress of water or particulate matter of other IEC product safety standards (e.g. IEC 60335-1 and IEC 60950-1) for non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS. Information technology communication (ITC) equipment, such as computers, cable boxes and modems should not have new or additional requirements just because they have a FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION to ME EQUIPMENT.

The MANUFACTURER should identify what ingress protection is appropriate for non-medical equipment and non-medical ACCESSORIES used in an ME SYSTEM. It is not expected that non-medical equipment or ACCESSORIES necessarily require the same ingress protection as the ME EQUIPMENT. The relative proximity of non-medical equipment and ACCESSORIES to the ME EQUIPMENT and PATIENT can demand a lesser or greater ingress requirement. While the non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of the ME SYSTEM can share a conductive connection (electrical or fluid) with the ME EQUIPMENT, the non-medical equipment and ACCESSORIES do not share a conductive connection to the PATIENT. In accordance with Clause 6, all cord-connected ME EQUIPMENT for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are required to have F-TYPE APPLIED PARTS.

Subclause 8.5.1 – Indication of state

Providing a means to determine the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE allows the OPERATOR to plan for replacement so that continuous operation remains possible. It can also be important for the OPERATOR to be aware of the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE while the ME EQUIPMENT is powered from SUPPLY MAINS.

Many simple measuring devices, e.g. a thermometer, do not have display space to indicate this continuously, and are used aperiodically. An OPERATOR needs to look at the display to know the state; it is little different to press a button to see this indication. As a result, permitting OPERATOR action to indicate the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is acceptable. Continuous display when the thermometer is in the medicine cabinet is of no value.

Many ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS not intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT do not need a TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION that indicates a loss of battery power, since the lack of any displayed output can be an adequate indication of no operation. However, inaccurate output data frequently could be considered as a loss of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE and would generally require a TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION. See 8.4 for additional requirements when the safety of the PATIENT is dependent on continual operation.

It should be understood that both 12.1 and 12.2 of the general standard can also apply to the MANUFACTURER'S implementation of the means of indicating the state of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, i.e. the MANUFACTURER needs to determine how accurate this indication needs to be and that the intended OPERATOR can understand the indication.

Subclause 10.1 – Additional requirements for mechanical strength

NORMAL USE in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT includes rough handling beyond that anticipated in a professional healthcare facility. Test methods considered representative have been specified based on usage categories having to do with whether the ME EQUIPMENT is STATIONARY while being used, or if it is sometimes moving during NORMAL USE.

ME EQUIPMENT in NORMAL USE is subjected to mechanical stresses (e.g. vibration, shock) and could randomly be subjected to additional stresses. Therefore ME EQUIPMENT needs to be robust enough to withstand the vibration, shock, bumps and drops that it will encounter in NORMAL USE. These tests were chosen by first qualitatively assessing the relative severity of the scenarios within various environments (i.e. home, and private transport) on various sizes and types (i.e. HAND-HELD, PORTABLE, MOBILE, BODY-WORN and TRANSIT-OPERABLE) of ME EQUIPMENT. The results of this analysis for the various types of shock and vibration expected to be experienced are shown in Table A.3.

Table A.3 – Qualitative assessment of HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT ME EQUIPMENT subjected to shock and vibration

	Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use				TRANSIT-OPERABLE use ^a			
	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN	MOBILE	PORTABLE	HAND-HELD	BODY-WORN
Vibration	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	1
Shock	1	1	1	1	2	2	3	2
Drop	1	1	3	2	2	2	3	3
Mechanical strength 0=no test, 1=least severe or 7M1 ^b , 2=moderately severe or 7M2, 3=most severe or 7M3								
^a TRANSIT-OPERABLE use includes use outdoors, use in automobiles and use in or attached to wheelchairs.								
^b The 7Mx designations are described in IEC 60721-3-7:1995 [5] and IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].								

Consistent with the philosophy of the general standard, this standard relies on the mechanical strength requirements of other IEC product safety standards (e.g. IEC 60335-1 [3] and IEC 60950-1 [8]) for non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS. ITC equipment, such as computers, cable boxes and modems should not have new or additional requirements just because they have a FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION to ME EQUIPMENT.

BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is considered TRANSIT-OPERABLE, given a PATIENT'S normal daily routine, including walking or otherwise moving around, sometimes outside of the home. Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is only considered likely for bed-ridden PATIENTS. The severity analysis for TRANSIT-OPERABLE BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is formulated taking into account the body's shock absorbing properties. Whether ME EQUIPMENT is intended for TRANSIT-OPERABLE or non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use is based on how the MANUFACTURER describes the INTENDED USE in the instructions for use.

EXAMPLE 1 A PORTABLE enteral feeding pump can be intended for use on a seated PATIENT (non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE) or for use on a walking PATIENT (TRANSIT-OPERABLE).

EXAMPLE 2 A PORTABLE ventilator can be intended for use on a seated PATIENT (non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE) or for use mounted on a wheelchair (TRANSIT-OPERABLE).

Subclause 10.1.2 – Requirements for mechanical strength for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

After qualitative assessment, the committee assessed the International Standards in the IEC 60068 series relevant to environmental testing, and their respective rationales, as well as the IEC 60721 series of guidance documents. In selecting the requirements, the committee reviewed other sources for material related to these tests (e.g. MIL-STD-810F [15], etc.) but found the best fit was with IEC 60721-3-7:1995 [5]. This International Standard mapped well to the requirements defined in Table A.3. There is also a guidance document, IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7] that helps to correlate environmental condition classes of IEC 60721-3 to environmental tests according to the IEC 60068 series.

The aforementioned International Standards specify 3 classes of mechanical conditions: 7M1, 7M2 and 7M3. The committee found the range of classes 7M1, 7M2 and 7M3 to represent the range of conditions seen during use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE and TRANSIT-OPERABLE use. The committee agreed that different tests and test levels should be applied to ME EQUIPMENT intended for non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE use versus equipment intended for TRANSIT-OPERABLE use based on its portability, as indicated in this standard.

In most cases, non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT used in both the professional healthcare facility and the HOME CARE ENVIRONMENT are severity level 7M1. Although this would imply that no additional testing other than that in the general standard should be needed, the committee felt some additional mechanical strength testing was necessary due to operation by LAY OPERATORS and the presence of children in the HOME CARE ENVIRONMENT.

For non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE HAND-HELD ME EQUIPMENT, free fall 7M3 is less severe than the 1 m drop already specified in the general standard. The committee retained the drop test in the general standard. Non-TRANSIT-OPERABLE BODY-WORN ME EQUIPMENT is considered as though it were always HAND-HELD and not PORTABLE ME EQUIPMENT. The committee considered it likely that such ME EQUIPMENT is likely to be dropped while being handled.

As required in the general standard, ME EQUIPMENT is required to be equipped with its intended ACCESSORIES, as indicated in the instructions for use, during mechanical strength testing. ME EQUIPMENT such as beds, PATIENT transport and wheelchairs, are loaded with the intended PATIENT load, as indicated in the instructions for use, during free fall, shock, and vibration testing.

Determining that rough handling (vibration, shock, and drop) testing has not resulted in an unacceptable RISK, includes determining that BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE have been maintained. Engineering judgment can be used to formulate a practical test methodology for verifying acceptable RISK during and after rough handling. For ME EQUIPMENT, such as ME EQUIPMENT with mechanical moving parts, (i.e. ventilators, overflow switch), it can be necessary to have the ME EQUIPMENT operate as intended and maintain ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE while undergoing the tests. For other ME EQUIPMENT, it is only necessary to verify BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE after the rough handling tests.

Temporary interruptions of intended operation can be tolerated if consistent with ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE. For example, with a breast pump, an overflow cut-off switch could be easily reset by the OPERATOR after a mechanical disturbance, and this temporary interruption of intended operation was not likely to be considered an unacceptable RISK.

Subclause 10.1.3 – Requirements for mechanical strength for TRANSIT-OPERABLE ME EQUIPMENT

ME EQUIPMENT which in NORMAL USE is intended to be used while the PATIENT is moving (i.e. walking, riding in a automobile) will be subjected to these mechanical stresses (e.g. vibration, shock, and drop) and could randomly be subjected to additional stresses. Therefore, ME EQUIPMENT intended to be used while the PATIENT is moving needs to be robust enough to withstand the mechanical strength testing described by IEC 60721-3-7:1995 [6] level 7M3. IEC 60721-3-7:1995 indicates that in addition to the conditions covered by class 7M2, the class 7M3 applies to use at, and direct transfer between, locations with significant vibrations, or with high-level shocks. Rough handling and transfer of ME EQUIPMENT is expected in these environments such as use in automobiles and on wheelchairs. Free fall 7M3 is less severe than the 1 m drop already specified in the general standard. The committee retained the drop test in the general standard.

There are no established generalized test programs that exactly reproduce the range of vibration and shock conditions that ME EQUIPMENT can be subjected to when installed in a range of land vehicles and aircraft. Therefore the dynamic tests specified in this subclause have been chosen on the basis that ME EQUIPMENT tested to these levels is likely to withstand the normal dynamic disturbances that it can be subjected to when used in the range of environments, vehicles and aircraft that PATIENTS are likely to be in during normal everyday activities.

It is essential that thorough analysis is used to assess the BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE of the ME EQUIPMENT use during its transportation from one location to another. ME EQUIPMENT today is expected to enable persons to experience a better quality of life and not to limit their daily living by having to provide special care and treatment to ME EQUIPMENT in order to get these benefits. So evaluation of ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE should be considered as appropriate for certain ME EQUIPMENT during the performance of these tests.

MANUFACTURERS of TRANSIT-OPERABLE non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS should consider whether or not additional mechanical strength testing of the non-ME EQUIPMENT parts of ME SYSTEMS is necessary to ensure BASIC SAFETY and ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE.

For free-fall testing described in IEC 60068-2-31:2008, the committee used the rationale for the various levels to gauge the severity of the test based on Table A.3. The severity of the drop (the drop height) was based on the mass of the ME EQUIPMENT. The committee agreed that some ME EQUIPMENT is likely to be supplied with a protective or carrying case for PORTABLE use. When a carrying case is used during mechanical strength testing, it should be the same case that is used during testing of the protection against ingress of water or particulate matter.

Where the Test 1 or Test 2 test method is specified in this subclause, the intent is that the MANUFACTURER is permitted to select the test method that is more practical or otherwise advantageous to them. The test methods are considered equivalent methods to verify the effectiveness of RISK CONTROL measure(s) for rough handling.

Subclause 11 – Protection against strangulation or asphyxiation

When assessing the potential for strangulation or asphyxiation, the following should be considered:

- The actual occurrence of strangulation or asphyxiation by ME EQUIPMENT in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT is not known. As in other areas of medical misadventure, there could be underreporting of these types of events.
- The RISK associated with cords placed close to children is well described in the literature [20] [17] [5]. The force necessary to strangle a child is relatively small; therefore, children are particularly vulnerable to this HAZARD.

NOTE The number of fatalities caused by entanglement was significantly higher in the group of children older than 7 months in the study by Drago and Danenberg [17].

- The RISK from cords, cables or tubes is related to the PATIENT'S cognitive level, age, mobility, coordination and strength. Because of these factors, such PATIENTS are less able to untangle themselves if caught up in or hanging from cords, cables or tubes.
- The overall number of tubings and lines (e.g. oxygen tubing, pulse oximetry, electrocardiographic leads, intravenous tubing) and the length of the ME EQUIPMENT umbilical can further increase the RISK of strangulation.
- A MOBILE PATIENT increases the RISK of pulling and tightening cords, cables or tubes around the PATIENT'S neck or limbs.

An example of this problem is the potential of flexible lines and tubing to "wrap" around and thus encircle limbs or the neck. An active prevention strategy could include a stiff clear plastic sleeve that can be placed on intravenous lines and any other tubing/wire close to the PATIENT. This device helps prevent the tubing from wrapping, while maintaining the function of the ME EQUIPMENT and mobility of the PATIENT.

To the extent possible, MANUFACTURERS should avoid the use of small parts that could become a choking HAZARD. Particular care is needed to avoid problems with babies and younger children. Since children can be visitors in all HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENTS, attention to this problem is needed for any ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended for the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

ISO 8124-1 [10] specifies acceptable criteria for structural characteristics of toys intended for use by children in various age groups from birth to 14 years, such as shape, size, contour, and spacing. To the extent that small parts cannot be avoided, see 7.4.1 for the required for warnings. ISO 8124-1 could serve as a guide as it contains warnings and/or instructions for use with toys or their packaging.

Subclause 13.1 – Additional requirements for generation of ALARM SIGNALS

In the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT, auditory ALARM SIGNALS are at least as important as visual ALARM SIGNALS. ALARM CONDITIONS that require either immediate or prompt OPERATOR action to protect the safety of the PATIENT are required to have an auditory ALARM SIGNAL. That ALARM SIGNAL is permitted to be present either at the ME EQUIPMENT or at a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM. By permitting a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM to provide the auditory ALARM SIGNALS, this standard permits designs that allow the PATIENT area to be quiet, e.g. the baby's room, while the ALARM SIGNALS are present where the OPERATOR is located, e.g. the parents' room.

Subclause 13.2 – Additional requirements for ALARM SIGNALS volume

Reducing the auditory ALARM SIGNAL volume below audible levels effectively initiates the ALARM OFF or AUDIO OFF ALARM SIGNAL inactivation state. This standard requires such an action to indicate that ALARM SIGNALS are inactivated. Such an action is inappropriate for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEMS intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT unless it is connected to a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM that is capable of generating auditory ALARM SIGNALS.

Annex B (informative)

Guide to marking and labelling requirements for ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS

B.1 Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts

The requirements for marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT and their parts are found in 7.2 and in Table C.1 of the general standard. Additional requirements for marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT and ME SYSTEMS intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.1.

Table B.1 – Marking on the outside of ME EQUIPMENT, ME SYSTEMS or their parts

Description of marking	Subclause
Environmental conditions of transport and storage on ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.2
Environmental conditions of transport and storage on carrying case, if provided	4.2.2
Environmental operating conditions on ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.3
Environmental operating conditions on carrying case, if provided	4.2.3
IP classification on ENCLOSURE	7.2
IP classification on carrying case, if provided	7.2
'Keep dry' or symbol on ENCLOSURE, if required	7.2

B.2 Accompanying documents, general

The requirements for information to be included in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS are found in 7.9.1 and Table C.4 of the general standard. Additional requirements for general information to be included in the ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS relating to ME EQUIPMENT and in ME SYSTEMS in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.2.

Table B.2 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, general

Description of requirement	Subclause
Contact the MANUFACTURER for assistance or reporting	7.3.1
Precautions to be taken in the event of changes in the performance	7.3.2
Precautions to be taken regarding the exposure to reasonably foreseeable environmental conditions	7.3.2
Information regarding medicinal substances to be delivered, if any	7.3.2
Information on any medicinal substances or human blood derivatives incorporated into the ME EQUIPMENT or ACCESSORIES, if any	7.3.2
Degree of accuracy claimed for a measuring function, if provided	7.3.2
Postal address and either a telephone number or web address	7.3.1

B.3 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use

The requirements for information to be included in the instructions for use are found in 7.9.2 and Table C.5 of the general standard. Additional requirements for information to be included in the instructions for use are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.3.

Table B.3 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, instructions for use

Description of requirement	Subclause
Alternative life-supporting methods to be employed following a loss or failure of the electrical power supply for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT: description of	8.4
Cleaning, cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization instructions for single PATIENT use, as appropriate	7.4.7
Conditions that can unacceptably affect the ME EQUIPMENT: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – effects of lint, dust, light – list of known devices or other sources that can potentially cause interference problems – effects of degraded sensors and electrodes, or loosened electrodes, that can degrade performance or cause other problems – effects caused by pets, pests or children 	7.4.5
Contact details for the source of professional hygienic maintenance, if applicable	7.4.7
Diagrams, illustrations or photographs of the fully assembled and ready-to-operate ME EQUIPMENT	7.4.3
Diagrams, illustrations, or photographs showing proper connection of the PATIENT to the ME EQUIPMENT, ACCESSORIES and other equipment	7.4.4
Effect on safety of modifying the equipment: warning of	7.4.1
Environmental conditions of transport and storage of ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.2
Environmental operating conditions of ME EQUIPMENT	4.2.3
EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT	7.4.8
EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE of the ME EQUIPMENT	7.4.8
Frequency of cleaning, cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization required when used on the same PATIENT, when appropriate	7.4.7
HAZARDS, likely consequences, and the precautions for reducing the RISK for each warning and safety notice, including where applicable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – strangulation or asphyxiation – small parts – allergic reactions – contact injuries 	7.4.1
Indication that it is necessary to clean and disinfect or clean and sterilize between PATIENT uses including methods for rinsing, drying, handling and storage until re-use	7.4.7
Indication that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be operated in a carrying case	4.2.3
Indication that the ME EQUIPMENT is intended to be transported or stored in a carrying case	4.2.2
Information concerning the proper disposal of the ME EQUIPMENT, its parts or ACCESSORIES	7.4.9
Instruction for the LAY RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION to contact its local authorities to determine the proper method of disposal of potentially bio-hazardous parts and ACCESSORIES: statement regarding, if applicable	7.4.9
Interconnection to equipment not described in the instructions for use: warning of	7.4.1
Meaning of the IP classification marking	7.4.5
Recommended placement of remote parts of a DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM, if applicable	7.4.10
Required professional hygienic maintenance prior to re-use statement, if applicable	7.4.7
Requirements for INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, where applicable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – typical operation time or number of PROCEDURES – typical service life – behavior while a rechargeable INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE is charging 	7.4.2
SHELF LIFE of parts or ACCESSORIES shipped with the ME EQUIPMENT, if less than the EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE	7.4.8
State of the INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE, if applicable: how to determine	8.5
Time from switching "ON" until the ME EQUIPMENT is ready for NORMAL USE, if exceeding 15 s	7.4.4
Time or number of PROCEDURES available following a loss or failure of the electrical power supply for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT	8.4

Description of requirement	Subclause
Troubleshooting guide including necessary steps to be taken in the event of an ALARM CONDITION	7.4.6
Using ACCESSORIES, parts or material not described in the instructions for use: warning of	7.4.1
Using the ME EQUIPMENT outside its carrying case if some part of the protection required by this standard is provided by that carrying case: warning of	7.4.1

B.4 ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description

The requirements for general information to be included in the technical description are found in subclause 7.9.3 and in Table C.6 of the general standard. Additional requirements for information to be included in the technical description are found in the subclauses listed in Table B.4.

Table B.4 – ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS, technical description

Description of requirement	Subclause
Alternative life-supporting methods that can be employed for longer periods of loss or failure of the electrical power supply for ME EQUIPMENT or ME SYSTEM intended to actively keep alive or resuscitate a PATIENT: description of	8.4
Connect and verify that the PROTECTIVE EARTH TERMINAL is connected to the external protective earthing system: warning to	7.5.1
ME EQUIPMENT installation, including correct protective earth (PE) connection, must only be carried out by qualified SERVICE PERSONNEL: warning of	7.5.1
Methods for cleaning and disinfection or cleaning and sterilization, if professional hygienic maintenance required	7.5.2
Specifications of the PERMANENTLY INSTALLED PROTECTIVE EARTH CONDUCTOR	7.5.1
Verify the integrity of the external protective earthing system: warning to	7.5.1

Annex C (informative)

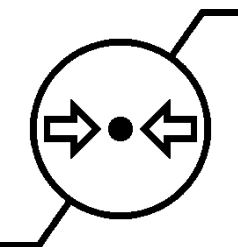
Symbols on marking

In addition to the symbols described in Annex D of the general standard, the symbols described in Table C.1 can be used on ME EQUIPMENT intended for use in the HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT.

Table C.1 – General symbols (1 of 2)

No.	Symbol	Reference	Title/Description/Requirement
1		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.4 (ISO 7000-0626 (2004-01))	Keep dry Indicates a medical device that needs to be protected from moisture.
2		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01))	Lower limit of temperature Indicates the lower limit of temperature to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The lower limit of temperature shall be indicated adjacent to the lower horizontal line.
3		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01))	Upper limit of temperature Indicates the upper limit of temperature to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The upper limit of temperature shall be indicated adjacent to the upper horizontal line.
4		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01))	Temperature limit Indicates the temperature limits to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The upper and lower limits of temperature shall be indicated adjacent to the upper and lower horizontal lines.
5		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620 (2004-01))	Humidity limitation Indicates the range of humidity to which the medical device can be safely exposed. The humidity limitation shall be indicated adjacent to the upper and lower horizontal lines.

Table C.1 (2 of 2)

No.	Symbol	Reference	Title/Description/Requirement
6		ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621 (2004-01))	<p>Atmospheric pressure limitation</p> <p>Indicates the range of atmospheric pressure to which the medical device can be safely exposed.</p> <p>The atmospheric pressure limitations shall be indicated adjacent to the upper and lower horizontal lines.</p>

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

Bibliography

- [1] IEC 60038:2009, *IEC standard voltages*
- [2] IEC 60065:2014, *Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus – Safety requirements*
- [3] IEC 60335-1:2010, *Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 1: General requirements*
- [4] IEC 60364 (all parts), *Low-voltage electrical installations*
- [5] IEC 60601-1-9, *Medical electrical equipment – Part 1-9: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Collateral standard: Requirements for environmentally conscious design*
- [6] IEC 60721-3-7:1995, *Classification of environmental conditions – Part 3: Classification of groups of environmental parameters and their severities – Section 7: Portable and non-stationary use*
- [7] IEC TR 60721-4-7:2001, *Classification of environmental conditions – Part 4-7: Guidance for the correlation and transformation of environmental condition classes of IEC 60721-3 to the environmental tests of IEC 60068 – Portable and non-stationary use*
- [8] IEC 60950-1:2005, *Information technology equipment – Safety – Part 1: General requirements*
IEC 60950-1:2005/AMD1:2009
IEC 60950-1:2005/AMD2:2013
- [9] IEC 61032:1997, *Protection of persons and equipment by enclosures – Probes for verification*
- [10] ISO 8124-1:2012, *Safety of toys – Part 1: Safety aspects related to mechanical and physical properties*
- [11] ISO 10651-2:2004, *Lung ventilators for medical use – Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance – Part 2: Home care ventilators for ventilator-dependent patients*
- [12] ISO/TR 16142:2006, *Medical devices – Guidance on the selection of standards in support of recognized essential principles of safety and performance of medical devices*
- [13] ASTM F2020-02, *Standard Practice for Design, Construction, and Procurement of Emergency Medical Services Systems (EMSS) Ambulances⁷⁾*
- [14] EN 13718-1:2008, *Medical vehicles and their equipment – Air ambulances – Requirements for medical devices used in air ambulances*
- [15] MIL-STD-810F(3):2003, *Environmental engineering consideration and laboratory tests*

⁷⁾ Available at: <http://www.astm.org>

- [16] BELMANS, R. et al. *Towards improved electrical installations in European homes*. International Union of Electricity Applications⁸⁾, 2004
- [17] DRAGO, D.A., DANNENBERG, A.L. Infant mechanical suffocation deaths in the United States, 1980–1997. *Pediatrics*, 1999; 103(5), p. e59
- [18] EMERY, J.L., et al. Apnea monitors and accidental strangulation. *BMJ*, 1992, 304, p. 117
- [19] NIXON, J.W., et al. Suffocation, choking, and strangulation in children in England and Wales: epidemiology and prevention. *Arch Dis Child*, 1995; 72, pp. 6 –10
- [20] RAUCHSCHWALBE, R., MANN, N.C.. Pediatric window-cord strangulations in the United States, 1981–1995. *JAMA*, 1997; 277, pp. 1696 –1698
- [21] SEHULSTER, L.M., et. al. *Guidelines for environmental infection control in health-care facilities. Recommendations from CDC and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC)*. American Society for Healthcare Engineering/American Hospital Association ⁹⁾, Chicago IL, 2004
- [22] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. *Write it Right, Recommendations for Developing User Instruction Manuals for Medical Devices Used in Home Health Care*, August 1993 ¹⁰⁾.
- [23] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. *Guidance on Medical Device Patient Labeling; Final Guidance for Industry and FDA Reviewers*, 19 April 2001 ¹¹⁾
- [24] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. *Assessing the Safety and Effectiveness of Home-Use In Vitro Diagnostic Devices (IVDs): Draft Points to Consider Regarding Labeling and Premarket Submissions*, October 1988 ¹²⁾
- [25] *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 86th edition, 2005-2006, Taylor & Francis
- [26] MIL-HDBK-310, *Global Climatic Data for Developing Military Products*

⁸⁾ Contactable at <http://www.uie.org>

⁹⁾ Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/gl_environinfection.html

¹⁰⁾ Available at: www.fda.gov/cdrh/dsma/897.pdf

¹¹⁾ Available at: www.fda.gov/cdrh/ohip/guidance/1128.pdf

¹²⁾ Available at: www.fda.gov/cdrh/ode/1359.pdf

Index of defined terms used in this collateral standard

ACCESS COVER	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.1
ACCESSIBLE PART	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.2
ACCESSORY	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.3
ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.4
AIR CLEARANCE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.5
ALARM CONDITION	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.141
ALARM OFF	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.4
ALARM LIMIT	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.3
ALARM SIGNAL	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.142
ALARM SYSTEM	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.143
APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.8
BASIC SAFETY	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.10
BODY-WORN	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.144
CLASS I	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.13
CLASS II	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.14
CREEPAGE DISTANCE	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.19
DISTRIBUTED ALARM SYSTEM	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.17
(ELECTROMAGNETIC) EMISSION	IEC 60601-1-2:2014, 3.4
ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	IEC 60601-1-2:2014, 3.6
EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES ENVIRONMENT	IEC 60601-1-12:2014, 3.1
ENCLOSURE	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.26
ESSENTIAL PERFORMANCE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.27
EXPECTED SERVICE LIFE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.28
F-TYPE APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.29
FIXED	IEC 60601-1:2006/AMD1:2012, 3.30
FUNCTIONAL CONNECTION	IEC 60601-1:2006, 3.33
FUNCTIONAL EARTH TERMINAL	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.35
HAND-HELD	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.37
HAZARD	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.39
HAZARDOUS SITUATION	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.40
HIGH PRIORITY	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.22
HOME HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT	3.1
INFORMATION SIGNAL	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.23
INTENDED USE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.44
INTERNAL ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCE	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.45
INTERNALLY POWERED	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.46
LAY	3.2
LEAKAGE CURRENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.47
LOW PRIORITY	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.27
MANUFACTURER	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.55
MEANS OF OPERATOR PROTECTION (MOOP)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.58
MEANS OF PATIENT PROTECTION (MOPP)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.59

MEDICAL ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT (ME EQUIPMENT).....	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.63
MEDICAL EQUIPMENT SYSTEM (ME SYSTEM)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.64
MEDIUM PRIORITY.....	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.28
MOBILE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.65
NETWORK/DATA COUPLING	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.68
NOMINAL (value).....	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.69
NORMAL USE.....	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.71
OPERATOR	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.73
OPERATOR PROFILE.....	IEC 60601-1-6:2010, 3.2
PATIENT	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.76
PATIENT LEAKAGE CURRENT	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.80
PERMANENTLY INSTALLED	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.84
PORTABLE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.85
PROCEDURE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.88
PROCESS (PROCESSING).....	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.89
PROGRAMMABLE ELECTRICAL MEDICAL SYSTEM (PEMS)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.90
PROPERLY INSTALLED	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.92
PROTECTIVE EARTH CONNECTION.....	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.94
RATED (value).....	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.97
RESPONSIBLE ORGANIZATION	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.101
RISK	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.102
RISK ANALYSIS	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.103
RISK CONTROL	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.105
RISK MANAGEMENT	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.107
RISK MANAGEMENT FILE	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.108
SERVICE PERSONNEL	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.113
SHELF LIFE	3.3
SIGNAL INPUT/OUTPUT PART (SIP/SOP)	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.115
STATIONARY	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.118
SUPPLY MAINS	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.120
TECHNICAL ALARM CONDITION	IEC 60601-1-8:2006, 3.36
THERMAL STABILITY	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.125
TOOL	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.127
TOUCH CURRENT.....	IEC 60601-1:2005, 3.129
TRANSIT-OPERABLE	3.4
TRANSPORTABLE.....	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.130
TYPE B APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.132
TYPE BF APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.133
TYPE CF APPLIED PART	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.134
USABILITY.....	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.136
USABILITY ENGINEERING	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.137
USABILITY ENGINEERING FILE.....	IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.147
USABILITY SPECIFICATION	IEC 62366:2007, 3.20

VALIDATION IEC 62366:2007, 3.26
VERIFICATION IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, 3.138

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

SOMMAIRE

AVANT-PROPOS	65
INTRODUCTION	68
1 Domaine d'application, objet et normes connexes	69
1.1 * Domaine d'application	69
1.2 Objet	69
1.3 Normes connexes	69
1.3.1 IEC 60601-1	69
1.3.2 Normes particulières	70
2 Références normatives	70
3 Termes et définitions	71
4 Exigences générales	72
4.1 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION pour les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM	72
4.2 * Conditions d'environnement pour les APPAREILS EM	73
4.2.1 Généralités	73
4.2.2 * Conditions d'environnement de transport et de stockage entre les utilisations	73
4.2.3 * Conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement	74
5 * Exigences générales relatives aux essais des APPAREILS EM	77
6 * Classification des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM	78
7 Identification, marquage et documentation des APPAREILS EM	79
7.1 * APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION des documents d'accompagnement	79
7.2 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le marquage de la classification IP	79
7.3 DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT	79
7.3.1 Information relative aux personnes à contacter	79
7.3.2 Information à fournir à l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE	80
7.4 Instructions d'utilisation	80
7.4.1 Exigences supplémentaires pour l'avertissement et les consignes de sécurité	80
7.4.2 * Exigences supplémentaires pour une source d'énergie électrique	81
7.4.3 Exigences supplémentaires pour la description de l'APPAREIL EM	81
7.4.4 Exigences supplémentaires pour la PROCEDURE de démarrage de l'APPAREIL EM	81
7.4.5 Exigences supplémentaires pour les instructions de fonctionnement	81
7.4.6 Exigences supplémentaires pour les messages de l'APPAREIL EM	82
7.4.7 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le nettoyage, la désinfection et la stérilisation	82
7.4.8 Exigences supplémentaires pour la maintenance	83
7.4.9 Exigences supplémentaires pour la protection de l'environnement	83
7.4.10 Exigences supplémentaires pour les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM	83
7.5 Description technique	83
7.5.1 APPAREIL EM DE CLASSE I INSTALLE DE FAÇON PERMANENTE	83
7.5.2 Exigences supplémentaires pour la maintenance professionnelle de l'hygiène	84
8 Protection contre les températures excessives et les autres DANGERS	84
8.1 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le nettoyage, la désinfection des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM	84

8.2	* Exigences supplémentaires pour la stérilisation des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM	84
8.3	Exigences supplémentaires pour la pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides dans les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM	84
8.3.1	* Pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides dans les APPAREILS EM	84
8.3.2	* Pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides dans les SYSTEMES EM	85
8.4	Exigences supplémentaires pour la coupure de l'alimentation / du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION d'un APPAREIL EM et d'un SYSTEME EM	85
8.5	Exigences supplémentaires pour une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE	86
8.5.1	* Indication de l'état	86
8.5.2	Accessibilité des sources d'énergie électrique internes de petite taille	86
9	Précision des commandes, des instruments et protection contre les caractéristiques de sortie dangereuses	86
10	Construction de l'APPAREIL EM	87
10.1	* Exigences supplémentaires pour la résistance mécanique	87
10.1.1	Exigences générales pour la résistance mécanique	87
10.1.2	* Exigences pour la résistance mécanique pour les APPAREILS EM non OPERATIONNELS EN DEPLACEMENT	89
10.1.3	* Exigences pour la résistance mécanique pour les APPAREILS EM OPERATIONNELS EN DEPLACEMENT	90
10.2	Exigences supplémentaires pour les organes de manœuvre des commandes des APPAREILS EM	91
11	* Protection contre la strangulation ou l'asphyxie	92
12	Exigences supplémentaires pour les émissions électromagnétiques des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM	92
13	Exigences supplémentaires relatives aux SYSTEMES D'ALARME des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM	92
13.1	* Exigence supplémentaire pour la génération des SIGNAUX D'ALARME	92
13.2	* Exigence supplémentaire pour le volume des SIGNAUX D'ALARME	93
Annexe A (informative) Lignes directrices générales et justifications		94
A.1	Lignes directrices générales	94
A.2	Justifications pour les articles et paragraphes particuliers	96
Annexe B (informative) Guide pour le marquage et exigences d'étiquetage pour les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM		117
B.1	Marquage sur l'extérieur des APPAREILS EM, des SYSTEMES EM ou de leurs parties	117
B.2	DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT, généralités	117
B.3	DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT, instructions d'utilisation	118
B.4	DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT, description technique	119
Annexe C (informative) Symboles relatifs au marquage		120
Bibliographie		122
Index des termes définis utilisés dans la présente norme collatérale		124
Figure 1 – Petit calibre de doigt d'essai Ø 5,6		78
Figure A.1 – Pression de la vapeur d'eau de saturation en fonction de la température		99
Tableau 1 – Matrice d'essai de résistance mécanique, non OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT		88
Tableau 2 – Matrice d'essai de résistance mécanique, OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT		89

Tableau A.1 – Pression de la vapeur d'eau de saturation en fonction de la température	100
Tableau A.2 – Résumé par type d'utilisation des exigences relatives aux ENVELOPPES des APPAREILS EM dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE contre la pénétration d'eau et de corps solides	110
Tableau A.3 – Évaluation qualitative des APPAREILS EM pour l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE soumis à des chocs et des vibrations	112
Tableau B.1 – Marquage sur l'extérieur des APPAREILS EM, des SYSTEMES EM ou de leurs parties	117
Tableau B.2 – DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT, généralités	117
Tableau B.3 – DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT, instructions d'utilisation	118
Tableau B.4 – DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT, description technique	119
Tableau C.1 – Symboles généraux (1 de 2)	120

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601 1-11 ed 2.0 (RLV):2015

COMMISSION ÉLECTROTECHNIQUE INTERNATIONALE

APPAREILS ÉLECTROMÉDICAUX –

Partie 1-11: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles – Norme Collatérale: Exigences pour les appareils électromédicaux et les systèmes électromédicaux utilisés dans l'environnement des soins à domicile

AVANT-PROPOS

- 1) La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (IEC) est une organisation mondiale de normalisation composée de l'ensemble des comités électrotechniques nationaux (Comités nationaux de l'IEC). L'IEC a pour objet de favoriser la coopération internationale pour toutes les questions de normalisation dans les domaines de l'électricité et de l'électronique. A cet effet, l'IEC – entre autres activités – publie des Normes internationales, des Spécifications techniques, des Rapports techniques, des Spécifications accessibles au public (PAS) et des Guides (ci-après dénommés "Publication(s) de l'IEC"). Leur élaboration est confiée à des comités d'études, aux travaux desquels tout Comité national intéressé par le sujet traité peut participer. Les organisations internationales, gouvernementales et non gouvernementales, en liaison avec l'IEC, participent également aux travaux. L'IEC collabore étroitement avec l'Organisation Internationale de Normalisation (ISO), selon des conditions fixées par accord entre les deux organisations.
- 2) Les décisions ou accords officiels de l'IEC concernant les questions techniques représentent, dans la mesure du possible, un accord international sur les sujets étudiés, étant donné que les Comités nationaux de l'IEC intéressés sont représentés dans chaque comité d'études.
- 3) Les Publications de l'IEC se présentent sous la forme de recommandations internationales et sont agréées comme telles par les Comités nationaux de l'IEC. Tous les efforts raisonnables sont entrepris afin que l'IEC s'assure de l'exactitude du contenu technique de ses publications; l'IEC ne peut pas être tenue responsable de l'éventuelle mauvaise utilisation ou interprétation qui en est faite par un quelconque utilisateur final.
- 4) Dans le but d'encourager l'uniformité internationale, les Comités nationaux de l'IEC s'engagent, dans toute la mesure possible, à appliquer de façon transparente les Publications de l'IEC dans leurs publications nationales et régionales. Toutes divergences entre toutes Publications de l'IEC et toutes publications nationales ou régionales correspondantes doivent être indiquées en termes clairs dans ces dernières.
- 5) L'IEC elle-même ne fournit aucune attestation de conformité. Des organismes de certification indépendants fournissent des services d'évaluation de conformité et, dans certains secteurs, accèdent aux marques de conformité de l'IEC. L'IEC n'est responsable d'aucun des services effectués par les organismes de certification indépendants.
- 6) Tous les utilisateurs doivent s'assurer qu'ils sont en possession de la dernière édition de cette publication.
- 7) Aucune responsabilité ne doit être imputée à l'IEC, à ses administrateurs, employés, auxiliaires ou mandataires, y compris ses experts particuliers et les membres de ses comités d'études et des Comités nationaux de l'IEC, pour tout préjudice causé en cas de dommages corporels et matériels, ou de tout autre dommage de quelque nature que ce soit, directe ou indirecte, ou pour supporter les coûts (y compris les frais de justice) et les dépenses découlant de la publication ou de l'utilisation de cette Publication de l'IEC ou de toute autre Publication de l'IEC, ou au crédit qui lui est accordé.
- 8) L'attention est attirée sur les références normatives citées dans cette publication. L'utilisation de publications référencées est obligatoire pour une application correcte de la présente publication.
- 9) L'attention est attirée sur le fait que certains des éléments de la présente Publication de l'IEC peuvent faire l'objet de droits de brevet. L'IEC ne saurait être tenue pour responsable de ne pas avoir identifié de tels droits de brevets et de ne pas avoir signalé leur existence.

La Norme Internationale IEC 60601-1-11 a été établie par le groupe de travail mixte du sous-comité 62A de l'IEC: Aspects généraux des équipements électriques utilisés en pratique médicale, du comité d'études 62 de l'IEC: Équipements électriques dans la pratique médicale, et du sous-comité SC3 de l'ISO: Ventilateurs pulmonaires et équipements connexes, du comité technique 121 de l'ISO: Matériel d'anesthésie et de réanimation respiratoire.

La présente publication est une norme double logo.

Cette deuxième édition constitue une norme collatérale de l'IEC 60601-1 (troisième édition, y compris l'Amendement 1): *Appareils électromédicaux – Partie 1: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles*, désignée ci-après par norme générale.

Cette deuxième édition annule et remplace la première édition de l'IEC 60601-1-11, parue en 2010. Cette édition constitue une révision technique.

Les modifications majeures par rapport à l'édition précédente sont les suivantes:

- correction de la méthode d'essai pour le contrôle de l'humidité relative à des températures supérieures à 35 °C;
- reformulation des paragraphes qui modifient plus qu'ils ne complètent la norme générale ou d'autres normes collatérales; et
- harmonisation avec les modifications apportées aux amendements de la norme générale et aux autres normes collatérales.

Le texte de cette norme collatérale est issu des documents suivants:

FDIS	Rapport de vote
62A/959/FDIS	62A/978/RVD

Le rapport de vote indiqué dans le tableau ci-dessus donne toute information sur le vote ayant abouti à l'approbation de cette norme collatérale. A l'ISO, la norme a été approuvée par 17 membres P sur 17 ayant voté.

Cette publication a été rédigée selon les Directives ISO/IEC Partie 2.

Dans la série des publications IEC 60601, les normes collatérales spécifient les exigences générales de sécurité applicables à:

- un sous-groupe d'APPAREILS ELECTROMEDICAUX (par exemple, les appareils de radiologie); ou
- une caractéristique spécifique commune à tous les APPAREILS ELECTROMEDICAUX, non traitée complètement dans la norme générale (par exemple, les SYSTEMES D'ALARME).

Dans la présente norme collatérale, les caractères d'imprimerie suivants sont utilisés:

- exigences et définitions: caractères romains;
- *modalités d'essais: caractères italiques;*
- les indications de nature informative apparaissant hors des tableaux, telles que les notes, les exemples et les références: petits caractères. Le texte normatif à l'intérieur des tableaux est également en petits caractères;
- TERMES DEFINIS A L'ARTICLE 3 DE LA NORME GENERALE, DANS LA PRESENTE NORME COLLATERALE OU COMME NOTES: PETITES MAJUSCULES.

Concernant la structure de la présente norme collatérale, le terme

- "article" désigne l'une des divisions numérotées dans la table des matières, avec toutes ses subdivisions (par exemple, l'Article 7 inclut les paragraphes 7.1, 7.2, etc.);
- "paragraphe" désigne une subdivision numérotée d'un article (par exemple, 7.1, 7.2 et 7.3.1 sont tous des paragraphes appartenant à l'Article 7).

Les références à des articles dans la présente norme, sont précédées du mot "Article" suivi du numéro de l'article concerné. Dans la présente norme collatérale, les références aux paragraphes utilisent uniquement le numéro du paragraphe concerné.

Dans la présente norme, la conjonction "ou" est utilisée avec la valeur d'un "ou inclusif", ainsi un énoncé est vrai si une combinaison des conditions quelle qu'elle soit est vraie.

Les formes verbales utilisées dans la présente norme sont conformes à l'usage donné à l'Annexe H des Directives ISO/IEC, Partie 2. Pour les besoins de la présente norme, l'auxiliaire:

- “devoir” mis au présent de l’indicatif signifie que la satisfaction à une exigence ou à un essai est impérative pour la conformité à la présente norme;
- “il convient” signifie que la satisfaction à une exigence ou à un essai est recommandée mais n’est pas obligatoire pour la conformité à la présente norme;
- “pouvoir” mis au présent de l’indicatif est utilisé pour décrire un moyen admissible pour satisfaire à une exigence ou à un essai.

Les articles, paragraphes et définitions pour lesquels une justification est fournie à l’Annexe A informative sont marqués d’un astérisque (*).

Une liste de toutes les parties de la série IEC 60601, publiées sous le titre général: *Appareils électromédicaux*, peut être consultée sur le site web de l’IEC.

Le comité a décidé que le contenu de cette publication ne sera pas modifié avant la date de stabilité indiquée sur le site web de l’IEC sous "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" dans les données relatives à la publication recherchée. A cette date, la publication sera

- reconduite,
- supprimée,
- remplacée par une édition révisée, ou
- amendée.

NOTE L’attention des Comités Nationaux et des Organismes Membres est attirée sur le fait que les fabricants d’appareils et les organismes d’essai peuvent avoir besoin d’une période transitoire après la publication d’une nouvelle publication IEC ou ISO, ou d’une publication amendée ou révisée, pour fabriquer des produits conformes aux nouvelles exigences et pour adapter leurs équipements aux nouveaux essais ou aux essais révisés. Le comité recommande que le contenu de cette publication soit entériné au niveau national au plus tôt 3 ans après la date de publication.

IMPORTANT – Le logo "*colour inside*" qui se trouve sur la page de couverture de cette publication indique qu’elle contient des couleurs qui sont considérées comme utiles à une bonne compréhension de son contenu. Les utilisateurs devraient, par conséquent, imprimer cette publication en utilisant une imprimante couleur.

INTRODUCTION

La pratique médicale utilise de plus en plus des APPAREILS ELECTROMEDICAUX et des SYSTEMES ELECTROMEDICAUX pour la surveillance, le traitement ou le diagnostic des PATIENTS dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE (voir 3.1). La sécurité des APPAREILS ELECTROMEDICAUX dans cet environnement non surveillé en ce qui concerne l'installation électrique et la sécurité et les moyens de protection qui lui sont associés constituent un motif de préoccupation.

L'éventuel manque de formation de l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE et de ceux qui surveillent l'utilisation de l'APPAREIL ELECTROMEDICAL ou du SYSTEME ELECTROMEDICAL et leur niveau de compétence nécessitent d'être pris en compte dans la mise au point des DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT et le marquage pertinent sur l'appareil lui-même, de sorte que cela puisse être compris. La présente norme collatérale donne des lignes directrices spéciales sur la façon dont il convient de traiter ceci dans les instructions d'utilisation.

La présente norme collatérale a été élaborée grâce aux contributions de médecins cliniciens, d'ingénieurs et d'autorités de tutelle. La terminologie, les exigences, les recommandations générales et les lignes directrices contenues dans la présente norme collatérale ont pour objectif d'être utiles aux FABRICANTS d'APPAREILS ELECTROMEDICAUX et de SYSTEMES ELECTROMEDICAUX et aux comités techniques responsables de l'élaboration des normes particulières.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60601-1-11:2015 (REV.2015)

APPAREILS ÉLECTROMÉDICAUX –

Partie 1-11: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles – Norme Collatérale: Exigences pour les appareils électromédicaux et les systèmes électromédicaux utilisés dans l'environnement des soins à domicile

1 Domaine d'application, objet et normes connexes

1.1 * Domaine d'application

La présente Norme Internationale s'applique à la SECURITE DE BASE et aux PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES des APPAREILS ÉLECTROMÉDICAUX et des SYSTEMES ÉLECTROMÉDICAUX, destinés à être utilisés dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE, selon la définition donnée en 3.1, et spécifiés par le FABRICANT dans les instructions d'utilisation. La présente Norme internationale s'applique sans distinguer si l'APPAREIL EM ou le SYSTEME EM est prévu pour être utilisé par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE ou par du personnel de santé qualifié.

L'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE comprend:

- l'habitation dans laquelle un PATIENT vit;
- d'autres environnements où des PATIENTS sont présents à l'intérieur comme à l'extérieur, à l'exclusion des environnements des établissements de soins où des OPERATEURS ayant une formation médicale sont disponibles de façon continue lorsque des PATIENTS sont présents.

La présente Norme Internationale ne s'applique pas aux APPAREILS EM et aux SYSTEMES EM destinés seulement à une utilisation dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SERVICES MEDICAUX D'URGENCE couvert par l'IEC 60601-1-12 ou seulement à une utilisation dans des établissements de soins couverts par l'IEC 60601-1 sans les additions de l'IEC 60601-1-12 ou de la présente norme collatérale. Néanmoins, les APPAREILS EM ou les SYSTEMES EM peuvent être prévus pour de multiples environnements d'utilisation et de ce fait, s'ils sont également destinés à être utilisés dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE, ils relèvent du domaine d'application de la présente norme.

EXEMPLE Les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM destinés à être utilisés dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE et dans l'environnement des établissements de soins.

NOTE Les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM pour l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE peuvent souvent être utilisés dans des emplacements où se trouvent des sources électriques non fiables et une mise à la terre électrique insuffisante.

1.2 Objet

La présente norme collatérale est destinée à spécifier des exigences générales qui viennent s'ajouter à celles de la norme générale et à servir de base pour les normes particulières.

1.3 Normes connexes

1.3.1 IEC 60601-1

Pour les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM, la présente norme collatérale complète l'IEC 60601-1.

Lorsqu'il est fait référence à l'IEC 60601-1 ou à la présente norme collatérale, soit individuellement soit en combinaison, les conventions suivantes sont utilisées:

- "la norme générale" désigne l'IEC 60601-1 seule;
- "la présente norme collatérale" désigne l'IEC 60601-1-11 seule;
- "la présente norme" désigne la combinaison de la norme générale et de la présente norme collatérale.

1.3.2 Normes particulières

Une exigence d'une norme particulière prévaut sur l'exigence correspondante de la présente norme collatérale.

2 Références normatives

Les documents suivants sont cités en référence de manière normative, en intégralité ou en partie, dans le présent document et sont indispensables pour son application. Pour les références datées, seule l'édition citée s'applique. Pour les références non datées, la dernière édition du document de référence s'applique (y compris les éventuels amendements).

NOTE 1 La manière dont ces documents de référence sont cités dans les exigences normatives détermine dans quelle mesure elles s'appliquent (en totalité ou en partie).

NOTE 2 Une liste de références informatives est donnée dans la bibliographie à la page 122.

CISPR 11:2009, *Appareils industriels, scientifiques et médicaux – Caractéristiques de perturbations radioélectriques – Limites et méthodes de mesure*

IEC 60068-2-27:2008, *Essais d'environnement – Partie 2-27: Essais – Essai Ea et guide: Chocs*

IEC 60068-2-31:2008, *Essais d'environnement – Partie 2-31: Essais – Essai Ec: Choc lié à des manutentions brutales, essai destiné en premier lieu aux matériels*

IEC 60068-2-64:2008, *Essais d'environnement – Partie 2-64: Essais – Essai Fh: Vibrations aléatoires à large bande et guide*

IEC 60529:1989, *Degrés de protection procurés par les enveloppes (Code IP)*

IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999

IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 ¹⁾

IEC 60601-1:2005, *Appareils électromédicaux – Partie 1: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles*

IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012 ²⁾

IEC 60601-1-2:2014, *Appareils électromédicaux – Partie 1-2: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles – Norme collatérale: Perturbations électromagnétiques – Exigences et essais*

IEC 60601-1-6:2010, *Appareils électromédicaux – Partie 1-6: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles – Norme collatérale: Aptitude à l'utilisation*
IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013) ³⁾

¹⁾ Il existe une édition consolidée 2.2 (2013) incluant l'IEC 60529:1989 et son Amendement 1 (1999) et l'Amendement 2 (2013).

²⁾ Il existe une édition consolidée 3.1(2012) incluant l'IEC 60601-1:2005 et son Amendement 1 (2012).

³⁾ Il existe une édition consolidée 3.1 (2013) incluant l'IEC 60601-1-6:2010 et l'Amendement 1 (2013).

IEC 60601-1-8:2006, *Appareils électromédicaux – Partie 1-8: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles – Norme collatérale: Exigences générales, essais et guide pour les systèmes d'alarme des appareils et des systèmes électromédicaux* IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012 4)

IEC 60601-1-12:2014, *Appareils électromédicaux – Partie 1-2: Exigences générales pour la sécurité de base et les performances essentielles – Norme collatérale: Exigences pour les appareils électromédicaux et les systèmes électromédicaux destinés à être utilisés dans l'environnement des services médicaux d'urgence*

IEC 62366:2007, *Dispositifs médicaux – Application de l'ingénierie de l'aptitude à l'utilisation aux dispositifs médicaux*
IEC 62366:2007/AMD1:2014 5)

ISO 7000, *Symboles graphiques utilisables sur le matériel — Symboles enregistrés*.
Disponible à l'adresse: <http://www.graphical-symbols.info/equipment>

ISO 7010:2011, *Symboles graphiques – Couleurs de sécurité et signaux de sécurité – Signaux de sécurité enregistrés*
ISO 7010:2011/AMD1:2012
ISO 7010:2011/AMD2:2012
ISO 7010:2011/AMD3:2012
ISO 7010:2011/AMD4:2013
ISO 7010:2011/AMD5:2014

ISO 15223-1:2012, *Dispositifs médicaux – Symboles à utiliser avec les étiquettes, l'étiquetage et les informations à fournir relatifs aux dispositifs médicaux – Partie 1: Exigences générales*

3 Termes et définitions

Pour les besoins du présent document, les termes et définitions donnés dans l'IEC 60601-1:2005 et l'IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, l'IEC 60601-1-2:2014, l'IEC 60601-1-6:2010 et l'IEC 60601-1-6:2010/AMD1:2013, l'IEC 60601-1-8:2006 et l'IEC 60601-1-8:2006/AMD1:2012, l'IEC 60601-1-12:2014, l'IEC 62366:2007 et les définitions suivantes s'appliquent.

NOTE 1 Dans le cadre du présent document, les termes "tension" et "courant", là où ils sont utilisés, signifient, sauf indication contraire, des valeurs efficaces des tensions ou courants d'un courant alternatif, continu ou complexe.

NOTE 2 Le terme "appareil électrique" est utilisé dans le sens d'APPAREIL EM ou autre appareil électrique. La présente Norme utilise aussi le terme "appareil" pour APPAREIL EM ou autre appareil électrique ou non électrique dans le cadre d'un SYSTÈME EM.

NOTE 3 Un index des termes définis utilisés dans la présente norme collatérale est donné à la page 124.

3.1 ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS À DOMICILE

habitation dans laquelle un PATIENT vit ou autres environnements où des PATIENTS sont présents, à l'exclusion des environnements des établissements de soins où des OPERATEURS ayant une formation médicale sont disponibles de façon continue lorsque des PATIENTS sont présents

EXEMPLES Dans une voiture, un autobus, un train, un bateau ou un avion, dans un fauteuil roulant, ou marchant à l'extérieur.

4) Il existe une édition consolidée 2.1 (2012) incluant l'IEC 60601-1-8:2006 et l'Amendement 1 (2012).

5) Il existe une édition consolidée 2.1 (2014) incluant l'IEC 62366:2007 et l'Amendement 1 (2014).

Note 1 à l'article: Les établissements de soins comprennent les hôpitaux, les cabinets médicaux, les centres chirurgicaux indépendants, les cabinets dentaires, les centres d'accouchement indépendants, les établissements de soins en résidence, les postes de premiers soins ou les postes de secours, les établissements multitraitements et les services médicaux d'urgence.

Note 2 à l'article: à l'article: Pour les besoins de la présente norme collatérale, les centres d'hébergement sont considérés comme des ENVIRONNEMENTS DE SOINS A DOMICILE.

Note 3 à l'article: D'autres environnements où un PATIENT est présent incluent l'environnement extérieur, au travail et l'intérieur des véhicules.

3.2

* NON SPECIALISTE

<adj> terme faisant référence à un non professionnel ou à un professionnel sans formation spécialisée appropriée

EXEMPLES Opérateur NON SPECIALISTE, ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE.

3.3

DUREE DE CONSERVATION

durée maximale pendant laquelle un élément peut être stocké avant sa première utilisation, dans les conditions décrites dans son étiquetage, et rester approprié pour une utilisation

3.4

OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT

<adj> terme faisant référence à un appareil TRANSPORTABLE dont l'UTILISATION PREVUE inclut un fonctionnement pendant qu'il est déplacé

EXEMPLES Un APPAREIL EM TRANSPORTABLE qui est PORTE SUR LE CORPS, PORTATIF, fixé à un fauteuil roulant, ou utilisé dans une voiture, un autobus, un train, un bateau ou un avion.

Note 1 à l'article: Pour les besoins de la présente norme, une utilisation OPERATIONNELLE EN DEPLACEMENT dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE peut inclure une utilisation à l'intérieur, à l'extérieur et dans des véhicules.

4 Exigences générales

4.1 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION pour les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM

Pour les APPAREILS EM ou LES SYSTEMES EM destinés à l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE, les caractéristiques du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION spécifiées en 4.10.2 de la norme générale s'appliquent, avec les additions suivantes:

Le RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE doit être supposé présenter les caractéristiques suivantes: pas de tension supérieure à 110 % ou inférieure à 85 % de la tension NOMINALE entre chacun des conducteurs du système ou entre l'un de ces conducteurs et la terre.

Pour les APPAREILS EM ou les SYSTEMES EM destinés à maintenir activement en vie ou à réanimer un PATIENT, le RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE doit être supposé présenter les caractéristiques suivantes: pas de tension supérieure à 110 % ou inférieure à 80 % de la tension NOMINALE entre chacun des conducteurs du système ou entre l'un de ces conducteurs et la terre.

La plage ASSIGNEE de la tension NOMINALE des APPAREILS EM dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE doit être comprise au moins entre 12,4 V et 15,1 V pour un fonctionnement à partir d'un RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION de 12 V en courant continu et au moins entre 24,8 V et 30,3 V pour un fonctionnement à partir d'un RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION de 24 V en courant continu.

Les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE doivent maintenir une SECURITE DE BASE et des PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES pendant et après un creux de 30 s à une tension de 10 V pour un fonctionnement à partir d'un RESEAU

D'ALIMENTATION de 12 V en courant continu, et pendant et après un creux de 30 s à une tension de 20 V pour un fonctionnement à partir d'un RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION de 24 V en courant continu.

4.2 * Conditions d'environnement pour les APPAREILS EM

4.2.1 Généralités

Il n'est pas nécessaire d'effectuer tous les essais d'environnement à des températures inférieures à +5 °C avec contrôle de l'humidité de l'enceinte d'essai.

NOTE Dans l'IEC 60601-1:2005 et IEC 60601-1:2005/AMD1:2012, le FABRICANT spécifie les conditions admissibles d'utilisation, y compris les conditions de transport et de stockage, dans la description technique (voir 7.9.3.1, 2ème tiret). Ces conditions sont référencées dans les exigences pour les essais dans la norme générale (par exemple 5.3 et 11.1.1).

4.2.2 * Conditions d'environnement de transport et de stockage entre les utilisations

Les instructions d'utilisation doivent indiquer les conditions d'environnement admissibles de transport et de stockage de l'APPAREIL EM après retrait de son emballage protecteur, puis entre les utilisations.

Sauf indication contraire dans les instructions d'utilisation ou si l'APPAREIL EM est STATIONNAIRE, l'APPAREIL EM doit rester opérationnel en UTILISATION NORMALE selon sa spécification et les exigences de la présente norme, après transport ou stockage, dans la plage d'environnement suivante:

- – 25 °C à + 5 °C; et
- + 5 °C à + 35 °C avec une humidité relative allant jusqu'à 90 %, sans condensation;
- > 35 °C à 70 °C à une pression de vapeur d'eau ne dépassant pas 50 hPa

après retrait de son emballage protecteur, puis entre les utilisations.

NOTE 1 Cela correspond à la classe 7K3 telle que décrite dans l'IEC/TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7] ⁶⁾.

Si les instructions d'utilisation spécifient une plage plus restreinte des conditions d'environnement de transport et de stockage entre les utilisations, ces conditions d'environnement doivent être:

- justifiées dans le DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES;
- marquées sur l'APPAREIL EM, sauf si un tel marquage n'est pas réalisable, auquel cas il suffit que la plage plus restreinte soit décrite dans les instructions d'utilisation; et
- marquées sur le coffret de transport, si les instructions d'utilisation indiquent que l'APPAREIL EM est prévu pour être transporté ou stocké dans un coffret de transport entre les utilisations.

Les symboles 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534 (2004-01)), 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533 (2004-01)) ou 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632 (2004-01)) de l'ISO 15223-1:2012 peuvent être utilisés pour marquer la plage de températures (voir Tableau C.1, symboles 2, 3 et 4). Le symbole 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620 (2004-01)) de l'ISO 15223-1:2012 peut être utilisé pour marquer la plage d'humidité (voir Tableau C.1, symbole 5) et le symbole 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621 (2004-01)) de l'ISO 15223-1:2012 peut être utilisé pour marquer la plage de pression atmosphérique (voir Tableau C.1, symbole 6). Lorsque l'APPAREIL EM a différents marquages pour les conditions de transport et de stockage entre les utilisations, les conditions de fonctionnement continues (voir 4.2.3.1) et les conditions de fonctionnement transitoires (voir 4.2.3.2), ces marquages doivent être accompagnés d'un marquage supplémentaire (par exemple, libellé approprié) sauf lorsque l'applicabilité respective est évidente (par exemple, limites pour le transport et de stockage

⁶⁾ Les chiffres entre crochets se réfèrent à la Bibliographie.

entre les utilisations sur le coffret de transport et limites pour le fonctionnement sur l'APPAREIL EM proprement dit).

La conformité est vérifiée par l'essai suivant et, lorsqu'une plage plus restreinte est décrite dans les instructions d'utilisation, par l'examen du DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES:

- a) *Préparer l'APPAREIL EM pour le transport ou le stockage conformément aux instructions d'utilisation.*

EXEMPLES Retrait des batteries, vidage des réservoirs de liquides.

- b) *Exposer l'APPAREIL EM aux conditions d'environnement de transport et de stockage les plus basses spécifiées (température -4°C):*

- *pendant au moins 16 h; ou*
- *confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.*

- c) *Puis exposer l'APPAREIL EM à une température de $34^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 4^{\circ}\text{C}$ et à une humidité relative de $90\% - 0\% + 6\%$ jusqu'à ce que l'enceinte d'essai atteigne l'équilibre. Il convient que la transition des conditions de température les plus basses aux conditions les plus élevées se fasse suffisamment lentement pour que l'environnement soit sans condensation. Le maintenir pendant au moins 2 h.*

- d) *Puis exposer l'APPAREIL EM aux conditions d'environnement de transport et de stockage les plus élevées spécifiées, sans requérir toutefois une pression partielle de vapeur d'eau supérieure à 50 hPa (température $+4^{\circ}\text{C}$):*

- *pendant au moins 16 h; ou*
- *confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.*

NOTE 2 Indiquer une durée d'exposition minimale à la fois aux conditions basses et aux conditions élevées de température a pour objectif de garantir que tout l'APPAREIL EM atteint les conditions spécifiées.

- e) *À la fin de cette période de conditionnement, permettre à l'APPAREIL EM de revenir et de se stabiliser aux conditions de fonctionnement en UTILISATION NORMALE.*

- f) *Évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il fournit la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES.*

4.2.3 * Conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement

4.2.3.1 Conditions de fonctionnement continues

Les instructions d'utilisation doivent indiquer les conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement admissibles de l'APPAREIL EM.

NOTE 1 Il convient que les conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement soient marquées sur l'APPAREIL EM OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT, sauf si un tel marquage n'est pas réalisable, auquel cas il est seulement nécessaire que les conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement soient décrites dans les instructions d'utilisation.

Sauf indication contraire dans les instructions d'utilisation, l'APPAREIL EM doit être conforme à ses spécifications et à toutes les exigences de la présente norme lorsqu'il fonctionne en UTILISATION NORMALE dans les conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement suivantes:

- une plage de température de $+5^{\circ}\text{C}$ à $+40^{\circ}\text{C}$;
- une plage d'humidité relative de 15% à 90% , sans condensation, sans requérir toutefois une pression partielle de vapeur d'eau supérieure à 50 hPa; et
- une plage de pression atmosphérique de 700 hPa à 1 060 hPa.

NOTE 2 Cela correspond à la classe 7K1 telle que décrite dans l'IEC/TR 60721-4-7:2001 [7].

Si les instructions d'utilisation spécifient une plage plus restreinte des conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement, ces conditions doivent être:

- justifiées dans le DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES;
- marquées sur l'APPAREIL EM, sauf si un tel marquage n'est pas réalisable, auquel cas il suffit que la plage la plus restreinte soit décrite dans les instructions d'utilisation; et
- marquées sur le coffret de transport si les instructions d'utilisation indiquent que l'APPAREIL EM est prévu pour fonctionner dans un coffret de transport.

Les symboles 5.3.5 (ISO 7000-0534), 5.3.6 (ISO 7000-0533) ou 5.3.7 (ISO 7000-0632) de l'ISO 15223-1:2012 peuvent être utilisés pour marquer la plage de températures (voir Tableau C.1, symboles 2, 3 et 4). Le symbole 5.3.8 (ISO 7000-2620) de l'ISO 15223-1:2012 peut être utilisé pour marquer la plage d'humidité (voir Tableau C.1, symbole 5) et le symbole 5.3.9 (ISO 7000-2621) de l'ISO 15223-1:2012 peut être utilisé pour marquer la plage de pression atmosphérique (voir Tableau C.1, symbole 6). Lorsque l'APPAREIL EM a différents marquages pour les conditions de fonctionnement continues et les conditions de fonctionnement transitoires (voir 4.2.3.2), ces marquages doivent être accompagnés d'un marquage supplémentaire (par exemple, libellé approprié).

L'APPAREIL EM doit être conforme à ses spécifications et à toutes les exigences de la présente norme lorsqu'il fonctionne en UTILISATION NORMALE dans les conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement spécifiées.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'essai suivant et, lorsqu'une plage plus restreinte est décrite dans les instructions d'utilisation, par l'examen du DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES:

- a) *Installer l'APPAREIL EM pour un fonctionnement conforme à son UTILISATION PREVUE.*
 - b) *Exposer l'APPAREIL EM à une température de $20\text{ °C} \pm 4\text{ °C}$:*
 - *pendant au moins 6 h, ou*
 - *confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.*
 - c) *Évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il fournit la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE et de rigidité diélectrique.*
 - d) *Évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il fournit la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES pendant qu'il est à la pression atmosphérique la plus basse spécifiée. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE et de rigidité diélectrique.*
 - e) *Évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il fournit la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES pendant qu'il est à la pression atmosphérique la plus élevée spécifiée. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE et de rigidité diélectrique.*
- NOTE 3 Pour un APPAREIL EM qui est sensible à la pression (par exemple qui utilise ou mesure des gaz ou des pressions ou qui utilise des commutateurs tactiles), l'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE et des PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES pendant que la pression varie dans toute direction peut être nécessaire.
- f) *Libérer la pression dans la chambre de pression*
 - g) *Refroidir l'APPAREIL EM jusqu'à ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus basses spécifiées (température 0 °C et humidité relative égale ou inférieure à 15 %).*

NOTE 4 Certaines enceintes d'essai peuvent nécessiter de modifier le mode de fonctionnement pour parvenir à cette combinaison de température et d'humidité.

- h) *Maintenir l'APPAREIL EM dans ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus basses spécifiées:*
 - *pendant au moins 6 h, ou*
 - *confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.*

- i) Évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il fournit la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE et de rigidité diélectrique.
- j) Chauffer l'APPAREIL EM jusqu'à ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement continues les plus élevées spécifiées, sans requérir toutefois une pression partielle de vapeur d'eau supérieure à 50 hPa (température $+4_0$ °C). Il convient que la transition des conditions les plus basses aux conditions les plus élevées se fasse suffisamment lentement pour que l'environnement soit sans condensation.
- k) Maintenir l'APPAREIL EM aux conditions de j):
 - pendant au moins 6 h, ou
 - confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.
- l) Évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il fournit la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE ou de rigidité diélectrique.

4.2.3.2 * Chocs environnementaux pour les APPAREILS EM OPERATIONNELS EN DEPLACEMENT

Si les instructions d'utilisation spécifient une plage plus large des conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement continues que celles indiquées en 4.2.3.1, les APPAREILS EM OPERATIONNELS EN DEPLACEMENT doivent maintenir la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES en présence de condensation et de chocs thermiques résultant de variations rapides de température et d'humidité de l'environnement durant l'UTILISATION PREVUE.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'essai suivant:

- a) Installer l'APPAREIL EM pour un fonctionnement conforme à son UTILISATION PREVUE.
- b) Exposer l'APPAREIL EM à ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus basses spécifiées (température 0_4 °C et humidité relative égale ou inférieure à 15 %).
- c) Maintenir l'APPAREIL EM dans ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus basses spécifiées:
 - pendant au moins 6 h, ou
 - confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.
- d) Exposer l'APPAREIL EM à ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus élevées spécifiées, sans requérir toutefois une pression partielle de vapeur d'eau supérieure à 50 hPa, en 5 min (température $+4_0$ °C).
- e) Tout en maintenant l'environnement de l'APPAREIL EM dans les conditions indiquées en d), évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il continue de fournir la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES jusqu'à ce qu'il atteigne la STABILITE THERMIQUE ou pendant au moins 2 h. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE ou de rigidité diélectrique en raison des valeurs ASSIGNEES des degrés de pollution exigés par la norme générale.

Un échantillon d'essai distinct peut être utilisé pour les essais suivants.

- f) Installer l'APPAREIL EM pour un fonctionnement conforme à son UTILISATION PREVUE.
- g) Exposer l'APPAREIL EM à ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus élevées spécifiées, sans requérir toutefois une pression partielle de vapeur d'eau supérieure à 50 hPa (température $+4_0$ °C).
- h) Maintenir l'APPAREIL EM dans ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus élevées spécifiées:
 - pendant au moins 6 h, ou

- *confirmer que l'APPAREIL EM atteint la STABILITE THERMIQUE pendant au moins 2 h.*
- i) *Exposer l'APPAREIL EM à ses conditions d'environnement de fonctionnement les plus basses spécifiées (température -4°C et humidité relative égale ou inférieure à 15 %) en 5 min.*
- j) *Tout en maintenant l'environnement de l'APPAREIL EM dans les conditions indiquées en i), évaluer l'APPAREIL EM quant à ses spécifications et confirmer qu'il continue de fournir la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES jusqu'à ce qu'il atteigne la STABILITE THERMIQUE ou pendant au moins 2 h. L'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE n'a pas à inclure d'essais de COURANT DE FUITE ou de rigidité diélectrique.*

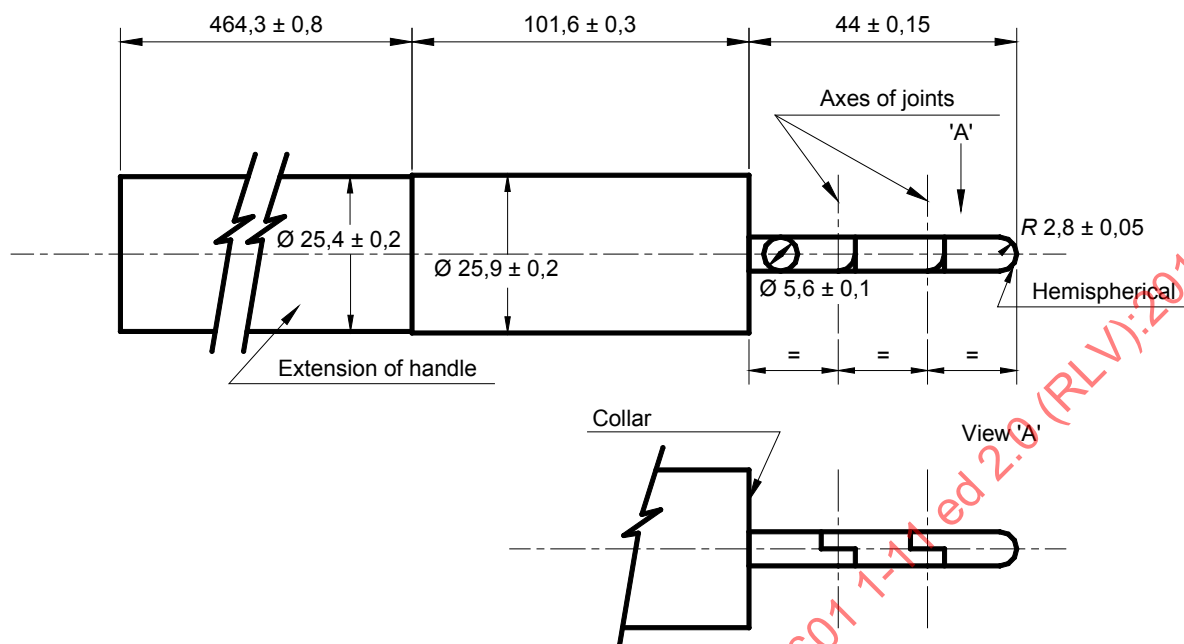
NOTE Pendant que l'APPAREIL EM se réchauffe ou se refroidit, l'évaluation de la SECURITE DE BASE et des PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES est répétée pendant deux heures ou jusqu'à ce que la STABILITE THERMIQUE soit atteinte.

5 * Exigences générales relatives aux essais des APPAREILS EM

Outre les exigences de 5.9.2.1 de la norme générale, les parties de l'APPAREIL EM qui sont à considérer comme des PARTIES ACCESSIBLES sont identifiées par examen et, lorsque c'est nécessaire, par des essais. En cas de doute, une partie de l'APPAREIL EM qui est à considérer comme une PARTIE ACCESSIBLE est déterminée par un essai avec le petit calibre du doigt d'essai représenté à la Figure 1, appliqué en position articulée ou rigide.

- pour toutes les positions de l'APPAREIL EM lorsqu'il fonctionne comme en UTILISATION NORMALE; et
- après ouverture des CAPOTS D'ACCES et retrait de parties, y compris les lampes, les fusibles et les porte-fusibles, lorsque:
 - i) les capots d'accès peuvent être ouverts sans l'utilisation d'un OUTIL, ou
 - ii) les instructions d'utilisation indiquent à l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE d'ouvrir le CAPOT D'ACCES approprié.

Dimensions en millimètres



- Doigt: matériau métallique
- Poignée: matériau isolant

NOTE 1 L'extension de la poignée représente le bras de l'enfant.

La poignée est pourvue d'une extension de 464,3 mm de longueur, et il convient d'appliquer le calibre avec ou sans cette extension, selon la condition la plus rigoureuse. Les deux articulations doivent permettre un mouvement dans le même plan et la même direction selon un angle de 90°.

NOTE 2 Ce calibre est destiné à simuler l'accès à des parties dangereuses par des enfants de 36 mois ou moins.

[IEC 61032:1997 [9], Figure 13]

Anglais	Français
Axes of joints	Axes des articulations
Hemispherical	Hémisphérique
Extension of handle	Extension de la poignée
Collar	Bague
View 'A'	Vue 'A'

Figure 1 – Petit calibre de doigt d'essai Ø 5,6

6 * Classification des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM

Outre les exigences de 6.2 de la norme générale, sauf si l'APPAREIL EM prévu pour l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS À DOMICILE est INSTALLE DE FAÇON PERMANENTE:

- il doit être de CLASSE II ou ALIMENTE DE MANIERE INTERNE;
- il ne doit pas avoir une BORNE DE TERRE FONCTIONNELLE; et
- s'il est équipé de PARTIES APPLIQUEES, il doit avoir soit des PARTIES APPLIQUEES DE TYPE BF, soit des PARTIES APPLIQUEES DE TYPE CF.

La conformité est vérifiée par examen.

7 Identification, marquage et documentation des APPAREILS EM

7.1 * APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION des documents d'accompagnement

Outre les exigences de 7.1.1 de la norme générale, l'APTITUDE À L'UTILISATION de l'identification, du marquage et des DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT destinés à l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE ou à l'ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE doit être évaluée en s'appuyant sur un PROFIL D'OPERATEUR qui correspond au minimum à huit années d'enseignement scolaire.

Il convient que les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM destinés à l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE soient conçus de façon à être simples à utiliser et n'exigent pas de se référer à des DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT complexes.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des résultats du PROCESSUS D'INGENIERIE DE L'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION.

7.2 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le marquage de la classification IP

Outre les exigences de 7.2.9 de la norme générale, si tout ou partie de la protection contre la pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides est fournie par un coffret de transport, alors

- l'ENVELOPPE de L'APPAREIL EM doit être marquée de son degré de protection et du signe de sécurité ISO 7010-W001 (voir 60601-1:2005, Tableau D.2, signe de sécurité 2),
 - ainsi que la mention "tenir au sec", ou
 - le symbole ISO 15223-1:2012, 5.3.4 (ISO 7000-0626) (voir Tableau C.1, symbole 1).
- le coffret de transport doit être marqué de son degré de protection.

Il est inutile de marquer un coffret de transport qui n'est pas destiné à fournir une protection contre la pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides.

EXEMPLE Si, pour l'APPAREIL EM OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT, l'ENVELOPPE fournit la protection contre la pénétration de corps solides et le coffret de transport fournit la protection contre la pénétration d'eau, l'ENVELOPPE de l'APPAREIL EM est marquée IP20 et le coffret de transport est marqué IP02.

La conformité est vérifiée par examen et par application des essais et des critères de 7.1.2 et 7.1.3 de la norme générale.

7.3 DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT

7.3.1 Information relative aux personnes à contacter

Outre les exigences de 7.9.1 et de 16.2 de la norme générale, les DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT pour les APPAREILS EM destinés à être utilisés par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE doivent indiquer qu'il convient que l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE ou l'ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE contacte le FABRICANT ou le représentant du FABRICANT:

- pour une assistance, si nécessaire, dans le montage, l'utilisation ou la maintenance de l'APPAREIL EM ou du SYSTEME EM; ou
- pour lui signaler un fonctionnement ou des événements imprévus.

Les DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT doivent inclure une adresse postale et soit un numéro de téléphone, soit une adresse web permettant à l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE ou à l'ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE de pouvoir contacter le FABRICANT ou le représentant du FABRICANT.

7.3.2 Information à fournir à l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE

Le cas échéant, outre les exigences de 7.9.1 et de 16.2 de la norme générale, les DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT doivent inclure les détails nécessaires au professionnel de santé pour informer l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE ou l'ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE de toutes les contre-indications connues concernant l'utilisation de l'APPAREIL EM ou du SYSTEME EM et de toutes les précautions à prendre. Celles-ci doivent inclure:

- les précautions à prendre dans l'éventualité de modifications des performances de l'APPAREIL EM ou du SYSTEME EM;
- les précautions à prendre concernant l'exposition de l'APPAREIL EM ou du SYSTEME EM à des conditions d'environnement raisonnablement prévisibles (par exemple, aux champs magnétiques, champs électromagnétiques, influences électriques externes, DECHARGE ELECTROSTATIQUE, pressions ou changements de pression, accélération, sources d'inflammation thermique);
- les informations adéquates concernant toute substance médicamenteuse destinée à être administrée par l'APPAREIL EM, y compris les limites relatives au choix des substances à délivrer;
- les informations sur toutes les substances médicamenteuses ou les dérivés de sang humain incorporés dans l'APPAREIL EM ou dans les ACCESSOIRES comme partie intégrante; et
- le degré de précision déclaré pour les APPAREILS EM ayant une fonction de mesurage.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des DOCUMENTS D'ACCOMPAGNEMENT.

7.4 Instructions d'utilisation

7.4.1 Exigences supplémentaires pour l'avertissement et les consignes de sécurité

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.2 et de 16.2 c) de la norme générale, pour chaque avertissement et consigne de sécurité, les instructions d'utilisation doivent décrire la nature du DANGER, les conséquences probables susceptibles de se produire si l'avis n'est pas suivi, et les précautions pour réduire le RISQUE.

Si elles sont applicables, les instructions d'utilisation doivent traiter les points suivants:

- strangulation due aux câbles et aux tuyaux, en particulier due à leur longueur excessive;
EXEMPLE 1 Strangulation résultant de l'étranglement d'un bébé ou d'un enfant dans les câbles de surveillance.
EXEMPLE 2 Strangulation résultant des tuyaux d'un système respiratoire.
- petites parties qui sont inhalées ou avalées;
EXEMPLE 3 Suffocation résultant de ce qu'un enfant a avalé une petite partie qui s'est détachée de l'APPAREIL EM.
- éventuelles réactions allergiques aux matériaux accessibles utilisés dans l'APPAREIL EM;
EXEMPLE 4 Sensibilité au latex-caoutchouc naturel.
- blessures par contact.
EXEMPLE 5 Irritation de la peau due à une exposition prolongée à des PARTIES APPLIQUEES ou d'autres ACCESSOIRES.

Le cas échéant, les instructions d'utilisation doivent inclure des avertissements du fait qu'il peut être dangereux:

- d'utiliser des ACCESSOIRES, des pièces détachées et des matériels non décrit(e)s dans les instructions d'utilisation (voir 7.9.2.14 de la norme générale);
- de connecter cet appareil à d'autres appareils non décrits dans les instructions d'utilisation (voir 16.2 c) tiret 9) de la norme générale);
- de modifier l'appareil;

- d'utiliser l'APPAREIL EM en dehors de son coffret de transport si une partie de la protection exigée par la présente norme est fournie par ce coffret de transport (voir 8.3.1 et 10.1).

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation et l'examen du DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES.

7.4.2 * Exigences supplémentaires pour une source d'énergie électrique

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.4 de la norme générale, si l'APPAREIL EM est équipé d'une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE et que la SECURITE DE BASE ou les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES dépendent de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE, les instructions d'utilisation doivent décrire:

- la durée de fonctionnement ou le nombre de PROCEDURES typique;
- la durée de vie en service typique de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE; et
- pour une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE rechargeable, le comportement de l'APPAREIL EM pendant que la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE rechargeable est en charge.

EXEMPLE 1 Nombre d'années après lesquelles une batterie rechargeable est à remplacer.

EXEMPLE 2 Nombre de cycles de décharge après lesquels une batterie rechargeable est à remplacer.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.3 Exigences supplémentaires pour la description de l'APPAREIL EM

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.5 de la norme générale, les instructions d'utilisation pour les APPAREILS EM destinés à être utilisés par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE doivent inclure des diagrammes, des illustrations ou des photographies facilement compréhensibles de l'APPAREIL EM complètement assemblé et prêt à fonctionner, y compris tous les organes de commande, tous les SIGNAUX D'INFORMATION visuels, et les indicateurs fournis avec l'APPAREIL EM (voir 7.1).

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.4 Exigences supplémentaires pour la PROCEDURE de démarrage de l'APPAREIL EM

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.8 de la norme générale, les instructions d'utilisation doivent inclure:

- des diagrammes, des illustrations ou des photographies facilement compréhensibles montrant la connexion correcte du PATIENT à l'APPAREIL EM, aux ACCESSOIRES et aux autres appareils (voir 7.1); et
- le temps s'écoulant à partir de la mise sous tension jusqu'à ce que l'APPAREIL EM soit prêt pour une UTILISATION NORMALE, si ce temps excède 15 s (voir 15.4.4 de la norme générale).
- le temps nécessaire à l'échauffement de l'APPAREIL EM à partir de la température de stockage minimale entre les utilisations (4.2.2) jusqu'à ce qu'il soit prêt pour son UTILISATION PREVUE lorsque la température ambiante est de 20 °C; et
- le temps nécessaire au refroidissement de l'APPAREIL EM à partir de la température de stockage maximale entre les utilisations (4.2.2) jusqu'à ce qu'il soit prêt pour son UTILISATION PREVUE lorsque la température ambiante est de 20 °C.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.5 Exigences supplémentaires pour les instructions de fonctionnement

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.9 de la norme générale, les instructions d'utilisation pour les APPAREILS EM destinés à être utilisés par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE doivent inclure une description des conditions généralement connues dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE

qui peuvent affecter de façon inacceptable la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES de l'APPAREIL EM et les mesures qui peuvent être prises par l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE pour identifier et résoudre ces conditions, et elles doivent inclure, le cas échéant, au moins les points suivants:

- les effets des peluches, de la poussière, de la lumière (y compris de la lumière solaire), etc.;
- une liste des dispositifs connus ou d'autres sources qui peuvent éventuellement provoquer des problèmes d'interférences;
EXEMPLE 1 Chaleur provenant d'un foyer ou d'un appareil de chauffage radiant.
EXEMPLE 2 Humidité provenant d'un nébuliseur ou d'une bouilloire.
- les effets de capteurs et d'électrodes dégradé(e)s, ou d'électrodes desserrées, qui peuvent diminuer les performances ou entraîner d'autres problèmes;
- les effets causés par des animaux domestiques, des insectes/animaux nuisibles ou des enfants.

Les instructions d'utilisation doivent expliquer la signification de la classification IP marquée sur l'APPAREIL EM et, le cas échéant, sur tout coffret de transport fourni avec l'APPAREIL EM.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation et par l'examen du DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES.

7.4.6 Exigences supplémentaires pour les messages de l'APPAREIL EM

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.10 de la norme générale, les instructions d'utilisation doivent inclure un guide de dépannage destiné à être utilisé en cas d'indications d'un dysfonctionnement de l'APPAREIL EM lors du démarrage ou pendant son fonctionnement. Le guide de dépannage doit décrire les mesures nécessaires à prendre dans l'éventualité de chaque CONDITION D'ALARME TECHNIQUE.

NOTE Voir aussi l'IEC 60601-1-8.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.7 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le nettoyage, la désinfection et la stérilisation

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.12 et 16.2 c) tiret 3 de la norme générale, pour les APPAREILS EM, les SYSTEMES EM, leurs parties ou ACCESSOIRES autres que ceux destinés à un usage unique et qui peuvent être contaminés par contact avec le PATIENT ou avec des fluides corporels ou des gaz expirés lors d'une UTILISATION PREVUE, les instructions d'utilisation doivent:

soit,

- indiquer la fréquence de nettoyage, de nettoyage et de désinfection, ou de nettoyage et de stérilisation, selon le cas, des APPAREILS EM, des SYSTEMES EM, des parties ou des ACCESSOIRES utilisés sur le même PATIENT, y compris les méthodes de rinçage, séchage, manipulation et stockage entre les utilisations (voir 8.1 et 8.2); et
EXEMPLE 1 Nettoyage et désinfection périodiques d'un système respiratoire, pour empêcher l'infection d'un PATIENT pendant des soins chroniques.
- lorsqu'ils sont destinés à des utilisations PATIENT multiples, indiquer qu'il est nécessaire de nettoyer et désinfecter ou de nettoyer et stériliser les APPAREILS EM, les SYSTEMES EM, les parties ou les ACCESSOIRES entre les utilisations sur différents PATIENTS, y compris les méthodes de rinçage, séchage, manipulation et stockage jusqu'à réutilisation (voir 8.1 et 8.2);
EXEMPLE 2 Nettoyage et désinfection d'un thermomètre après utilisation, pour empêcher une infection croisée des PATIENTS.

soit,

- indiquer que les APPAREILS EM, les SYSTEMES EM ou les ACCESSOIRES exigent une maintenance professionnelle de l'hygiène avant leur réutilisation et fournir les coordonnées pour contacter le prestataire de ces services (voir 7.5.2).

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.8 Exigences supplémentaires pour la maintenance

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.13 de la norme générale, les instructions d'utilisation doivent inclure:

- la DUREE DE VIE PREVUE des APPAREILS EM;
- la DUREE DE VIE PREVUE des parties ou des accessoires livrés avec les APPAREILS EM; et
- lorsque la durée DE CONSERVATION est inférieure à la DUREE DE VIE PREVUE, la durée de conservation des parties ou des accessoires livrés avec les APPAREILS EM.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.9 Exigences supplémentaires pour la protection de l'environnement

Outre les exigences de 7.9.2.15 de la norme générale, les instructions d'utilisation doivent inclure, le cas échéant, un avertissement indiquant que l'ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE doit contacter les autorités locales pour déterminer la méthode adéquate de mise au rebut des parties et des ACCESSOIRES potentiellement dangereux pour l'environnement.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.4.10 Exigences supplémentaires pour les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM

Pour un APPAREIL EM ou un SYSTEME EM utilisant un SYSTEME D'ALARME REPARTI, les instructions d'utilisation doivent inclure le placement recommandé des parties éloignées du SYSTEME D'ALARME REPARTI pour garantir qu'à tout moment un OPERATEUR peut être averti par un élément approprié du SYSTEME D'ALARME REPARTI dans sa plage spécifiée.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen des instructions d'utilisation.

7.5 Description technique

7.5.1 APPAREIL EM DE CLASSE I INSTALLE DE FAÇON PERMANENTE

Outre les exigences de 7.9.3.1 de la norme générale pour garantir qu'un APPAREIL EM DE CLASSE I INSTALLE DE FAÇON PERMANENTE est INSTALLE CORRECTEMENT, la description technique doit inclure:

- un avertissement, à savoir que l'installation de l'APPAREIL EM, y compris une CONNEXION DE TERRE DE PROTECTION correcte, ne doit être effectuée que par le PERSONNEL D'ENTRETIEN qualifié;
- les spécifications du CONDUCTEUR DE TERRE DE PROTECTION INSTALLE DE FAÇON PERMANENTE;
- un avertissement pour vérifier l'intégrité du système de terre de protection externe;
- un avertissement pour connecter et vérifier que la BORNE DE TERRE DE PROTECTION de l'APPAREIL EM INSTALLE DE FAÇON PERMANENTE est connectée au système de terre de protection externe.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen de la description technique.

7.5.2 Exigences supplémentaires pour la maintenance professionnelle de l'hygiène

Pour les APPAREILS EM ou les ACCESSOIRES qui exigent une maintenance professionnelle de l'hygiène avant leur réutilisation (voir 7.4.7), la description technique doit inclure les méthodes de nettoyage et de désinfection ou de nettoyage et de stérilisation:

- avant et après tout type de PROCEDURE d'entretien;
- lorsque l'APPAREIL EM est transféré à un autre PATIENT.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen de la description technique.

8 Protection contre les températures excessives et les autres DANGERS

8.1 * Exigences supplémentaires pour le nettoyage, la désinfection des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM

Outre les exigences de 11.6.6 de la norme générale, les PROCESSUS de nettoyage ou de nettoyage et de désinfection destinés à être réalisés dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE doivent pouvoir être réalisés par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE (voir 7.4.7). L'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION de chacun de ces PROCESSUS, dans la mesure où il s'agit d'un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE, doit être examinée par le PROCESSUS D'INGENIERIE D'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen du DOSSIER D'INGENIERIE D'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION.

8.2 * Exigences supplémentaires pour la stérilisation des APPAREILS EM et des SYSTEMES EM

Outre les exigences de 11.6.7 de la norme générale, les PROCESSUS de nettoyage et de stérilisation destinés à être réalisés dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE doivent pouvoir être réalisés par un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE (voir 7.4.7). L'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION de chacun de ces PROCESSUS, dans la mesure où il s'agit d'un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE, doit être vérifiée par le PROCESSUS D'INGENIERIE D'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen du DOSSIER D'INGENIERIE D'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION.

8.3 Exigences supplémentaires pour la pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides dans les APPAREILS EM et les SYSTEMES EM

8.3.1 * Pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides dans les APPAREILS EM

Outre les exigences de 11.6.5 de la norme générale, les APPAREILS EM OPERATIONNELS EN DEPLACEMENT, PORTATIFS et PORTES SUR LE CORPS doivent maintenir la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES après avoir été soumis à l'essai de l'IEC 60529:1989 et l'IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + l'IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 pour au moins IP22. Tous les autres APPAREILS EM doivent maintenir la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES après avoir été soumis à l'essai de l'IEC 60529:1989 et l'IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + l'IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013 pour au moins IP21. Pour un APPAREIL EM PORTABLE qui est seulement destiné à être utilisé dans un coffret de transport, cette exigence peut être satisfaite pendant que l'APPAREIL EM est dans le coffret de transport.

NOTE Ces niveaux de contraintes de l'ENVELOPPE sont considérés comme reflétant une UTILISATION NORMALE dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE.

La conformité est vérifiée par examen et par application des essais de l'IEC 60529:1989 et l'IEC 60529:1989/AMD1:1999 + l'IEC 60529:1989/AMD2:2013, l'APPAREIL EM étant placé dans la position d'UTILISATION NORMALE la plus défavorable. Confirmer que la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES sont maintenues.

8.3.2 * Pénétration d'eau ou de corps solides dans les SYSTEMES EM

Outre les exigences pour les ENVELOPPES dans 16.4 de la norme générale, les ENVELOPPES des parties des APPAREILS non EM des SYSTEMES EM doivent fournir le degré de protection contre la pénétration dangereuse d'eau ou de corps solides équivalent à celui des appareils conformes à leurs normes de sécurité IEC ou ISO respectives.

La conformité est vérifiée par les essais de l'IEC 60529:1989, l'appareil étant placé dans la position d'UTILISATION NORMALE la plus défavorable, et par examen.

Les essais de pénétration qui ont déjà été réalisés sur un appareil individuel d'un SYSTEME EM selon les normes pertinentes n'ont pas à être répétés. Voir également 5.1 de la norme générale.

8.4 Exigences supplémentaires pour la coupure de l'alimentation / du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION d'un APPAREIL EM et d'un SYSTEME EM

Outre les exigences de 11.8 et de 16.8 de la norme générale, un APPAREIL EM ou un SYSTEME EM dont les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES sont destinées à maintenir activement en vie ou à réanimer un PATIENT doit conserver ses PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES pendant un laps de temps suffisant ou pendant un nombre suffisant de PROCEDURES, en cas de perte ou de défaillance du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION ou de quasi-épuisement de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE. Le temps restant ou le nombre de PROCEDURES restant doit permettre d'utiliser d'autres méthodes de maintien de la vie.

NOTE 1 Les exigences pour une perte ou une défaillance du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION pendant de très courtes durées sont données dans l'IEC 60601-1-2.

Une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE peut être utilisée pour maintenir les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES. Des dispositifs indépendants peuvent également être utilisés pour maintenir les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES.

EXEMPLE 1 Pompe à commande manuelle ou appareil de réanimation.

Les instructions d'utilisation doivent décrire le laps de temps ou le nombre de PROCEDURES dont on dispose à la suite d'une perte ou d'une défaillance du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION ou en cas de quasi-épuisement de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE. Les instructions d'utilisation doivent décrire les autres méthodes de maintien de la vie à utiliser. La description technique doit décrire les méthodes qui peuvent être utilisées pendant des périodes plus longues.

NOTE 2 Une défaillance du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION électrique concerne une défaillance du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION ou un quasi-épuisement des SOURCES D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNES.

Si on n'utilise pas de SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE, l'APPAREIL EM ou les SYSTEMES EM dont les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES sont destinées à maintenir activement en vie ou à réanimer un PATIENT doivent être équipés d'un SYSTEME D'ALARME qui inclut au moins une CONDITION D'ALARME DE PRIORITE MOYENNE qui indique une défaillance du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION.

EXEMPLE 2 La tension du RESEAU D'ALIMENTATION descend au-dessous de la valeur minimale exigée pour un fonctionnement normal.

Si on utilise une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE, l'APPAREIL EM ou les SYSTEMES EM dont les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES sont destinées à maintenir activement en vie ou à réanimer un PATIENT doivent être équipés d'un commutateur automatique vers la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE.

NOTE 3 Une indication visuelle de ce mode de charge est exigée en 15.4.4 de la norme générale.

Si on utilise une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE, l'APPAREIL EM ou les SYSTEMES EM dont les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES sont destinées à maintenir activement en vie ou à

réanimer un PATIENT doivent être équipés d'un SYSTEME D'ALARME qui inclut au moins une CONDITION D'ALARME TECHNIQUE DE PRIORITE MOYENNE qui indique que la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE approche d'une énergie résiduelle insuffisante pour le fonctionnement de l'APPAREIL EM. Cette CONDITION D'ALARME TECHNIQUE doit fournir à un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE un laps de temps suffisant ou un nombre de PROCEDURES suffisant pour agir. Une CONDITION D'ALARME TECHNIQUE au moins de FAIBLE PRIORITE doit rester active jusqu'à ce que la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE soit revenue à un niveau qui est au-dessus de la LIMITE D'ALARME ou jusqu'à ce qu'elle soit épuisée. Il ne doit pas être possible de désactiver le SIGNAL D'ALARME visuel de cette CONDITION D'ALARME TECHNIQUE.

La conformité est vérifiée par examen, par essai fonctionnel et par l'examen du DOSSIER DE GESTION DES RISQUES.

8.5 Exigences supplémentaires pour une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE

8.5.1 * Indication de l'état

Si la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE est essentielle pour maintenir la SECURITE DE BASE ou maintenir les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES ou bien maîtriser les RISQUES associés à la perte des PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES, les APPAREILS EM doivent être équipés d'un dispositif permettant à l'OPERATEUR de déterminer l'état de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE.

L'état de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE peut être indiqué sous la forme:

- d'un nombre de PROCEDURES restant;
- de la durée de fonctionnement restante;
- de la durée de fonctionnement restante ou de l'énergie restante en pourcentage; ou
- d'une jauge de "carburant".

L'état de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE peut être indiqué de manière continue ou par action de l'OPERATEUR.

Les instructions d'utilisation doivent décrire la manière de déterminer l'état de la SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE.

La conformité est vérifiée par examen.

8.5.2 Accessibilité des sources d'énergie électrique internes de petite taille

Des moyens autres que l'étiquetage doivent être prévus pour prévenir le RISQUE d'avaler des éléments boutons. Le remplacement d'un élément bouton remplaçable doit nécessiter l'utilisation d'un OUTIL.

NOTE Pour les besoins de la présente norme, un élément bouton est considéré comme une SOURCE D'ENERGIE ELECTRIQUE INTERNE dont la hauteur totale est inférieure à son diamètre.

La conformité est vérifiée par examen.

9 Précision des commandes, des instruments et protection contre les caractéristiques de sortie dangereuses

Outre les exigences de 12.2 de la norme générale, lorsqu'on met en œuvre le PROCESSUS d'ingénierie d'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION, les RISQUES associés à l'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION dans l'ENVIRONNEMENT DES SOINS A DOMICILE pour les profils d'OPERATEUR y compris un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE doivent prendre en considération au moins les points suivants:

- les modifications des commandes;
- le mouvement inattendu;

- les possibilités de mauvaise connexion;
- les possibilités de dysfonctionnement ou d'utilisation dangereuse;
- les possibilités de confusion quant au mode de fonctionnement actuel;
- la modification dans le transfert d'énergie ou de substance;
- l'exposition aux conditions d'environnement spécifiées dans la présente norme;
- l'exposition à des matériaux biologiques; et
- les petites parties pouvant être inhalées ou avalées.

Une importance toute particulière doit être accordée à la formation limitée d'un OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE quant à l'aptitude à intervenir et à maintenir la SECURITE DE BASE et les PERFORMANCES ESSENTIELLES. Le FABRICANT doit inclure dans le PROCESSUS D'INGENIERIE DE L'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION l'OPERATEUR NON SPECIALISTE destinataire ou l'ORGANISME RESPONSABLE NON SPECIALISTE destinataire le moins capable.

EXEMPLES Les OPERATEURS NON SPECIALISTES avec limites sensorielles, cognitives, physiques ou comorbidités.

La conformité est vérifiée par l'examen du DOSSIER D'INGENIERIE D'APTITUDE A L'UTILISATION.

10 Construction de l'APPAREIL EM

10.1 * Exigences supplémentaires pour la résistance mécanique

10.1.1 Exigences générales pour la résistance mécanique

Les additions à la matrice d'essai de résistance mécanique du Tableau 28 de la norme générale sont indiquées dans le Tableau 1 et le Tableau 2.

Tableau 1 – Matrice d'essai de résistance mécanique, non OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT

Usage et type de l'APPAREIL EM	Essai d'après la norme générale	Essai d'après la présente norme
Non OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT et PORTATIF	Poussée (15.3.2)	-
	Chute (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Choc (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Suppression de la contrainte de moulage (15.3.6)	-
Non OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT et PORTE SUR LE CORPS	Poussée (15.3.2)	-
	Impacts (15.3.3)	-
	Chute (15.3.4.1)	-
	-	Choc (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Suppression de la contrainte de moulage (15.3.6)	-
Non OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT et PORTABLE	Poussée (15.3.2)	-
	Impacts (15.3.3)	-
	Chute (15.3.4.2)	-
	-	Choc (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Suppression de la contrainte de moulage (15.3.6)	-
Non OPERATIONNEL EN DEPLACEMENT et MOBILE	Poussée (15.3.2)	-
	Impacts (15.3.3)	-
	Chute (15.3.4.2)	-
	-	Choc (10.1.2 a))
	-	Vibration (10.1.2 b))
	Manipulations brutales (15.3.5)	-
	Suppression de la contrainte de moulage (15.3.6)	-
FIXE ou STATIONNAIRE	Poussée (15.3.2)	-
	Impact (15.3.3)	-
	Suppression de la contrainte de moulage (15.3.6)	-